

# Package ‘Giotto’

July 17, 2020

**Title** Spatial single-cell transcriptomics toolbox

**Version** 0.3.6.9001

**Description** Toolbox to process, analyze and visualize spatial single-cell expression data

**License** MIT + file LICENSE

**Encoding** UTF-8

**LazyData** true

**URL** <https://rubd.github.io/Giotto/>, <https://github.com/RubD/Giotto>

**BugReports** <https://github.com/RubD/Giotto/issues>

**RoxygenNote** 7.1.1

**Depends** base (>= 3.5.1),  
utils (>= 3.5.1),  
R (>= 3.5.1)

**Imports** data.table (>= 1.12.2),  
deldir,  
ggplot2 (>= 3.1.1),  
Matrix,  
magick,  
matrixStats (>= 0.55.0),  
methods,  
uwot (>= 0.0.0.9010),  
cowplot (>= 0.9.4),  
grDevices,  
graphics,  
RColorBrewer (>= 1.1-2),  
dbscan (>= 1.1-3),  
farver (>= 2.0.3),  
ggalluvial (>= 0.9.1),  
scales (>= 1.0.0),  
ComplexHeatmap (>= 1.20.0),  
qvalue (>= 2.14.1),  
lfa (>= 1.12.0),  
igraph (>= 1.2.4.1),  
irlba,  
plotly,  
parallel,  
reticulate (>= 1.14),

magrittr,  
 limma,  
 ggdendro,  
 smfishHmrf,  
 devtools,  
 reshape2,  
 ggraph,  
 Rcpp,  
 Rfast,  
 Rtsne ( $\geq 0.15$ ),  
 rlang ( $\geq 0.4.3$ ),  
 R.utils,  
 fitdistrplus,

**Suggests** knitr,  
 rmarkdown,  
 MAST,  
 scan ( $\geq 1.10.1$ ),  
 png,  
 FactoMineR,  
 tiff,  
 biomaRt,  
 trendsceek,  
 multinet ( $\geq 3.0.2$ ),  
 RTriangle ( $\geq 1.6-0.10$ )

**biocViews**

**VignetteBuilder** knitr

**LinkingTo** Rcpp,  
 RcppArmadillo

**Remotes** lambdamoses/smfishhmr-r

## R topics documented:

addCellIntMetadata . . . . .	8
addCellMetadata . . . . .	9
addCellStatistics . . . . .	10
addGeneMetadata . . . . .	11
addGenesPerc . . . . .	11
addGeneStatistics . . . . .	12
addGiottoImage . . . . .	13
addGiottoImageToSpatPlot . . . . .	13
addHMRF . . . . .	14
addNetworkLayout . . . . .	15
addStatistics . . . . .	16
adjustGiottoMatrix . . . . .	16
all_plots_save_function . . . . .	17
annotateGiotto . . . . .	19
annotateSpatialGrid . . . . .	20
annotateSpatialNetwork . . . . .	20
annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_2D . . . . .	21
annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_3D . . . . .	22

average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups . . . . .	22
binSpect . . . . .	23
calculateHVG . . . . .	25
calculateMetaTable . . . . .	26
calculateMetaTableCells . . . . .	27
calculate_distance_and_weight . . . . .	28
cellProximityBarplot . . . . .	28
cellProximityEnrichment . . . . .	29
cellProximityHeatmap . . . . .	30
cellProximityNetwork . . . . .	31
cellProximitySpatPlot . . . . .	33
cellProximitySpatPlot2D . . . . .	34
cellProximitySpatPlot3D . . . . .	36
cellProximityVisPlot . . . . .	39
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_ggplot . . . . .	41
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_plotly . . . . .	43
cellProximityVisPlot_3D_plotly . . . . .	44
changeGiottoInstructions . . . . .	46
changeImageBg . . . . .	47
clusterCells . . . . .	47
clusterSpatialCorGenes . . . . .	50
combCCcom . . . . .	51
combineCellProximityGenes . . . . .	51
combineCellProximityGenes_per_interaction . . . . .	53
combineCPG . . . . .	53
combineMetadata . . . . .	54
convertEnsemblToGeneSymbol . . . . .	55
convert_mgImage_to_array_DT . . . . .	55
createCrossSection . . . . .	56
createGiottoImage . . . . .	57
createGiottoInstructions . . . . .	58
createGiottoObject . . . . .	59
createGiottoVisiumObject . . . . .	61
createHeatmap_DT . . . . .	62
createMetagenes . . . . .	63
createNearestNetwork . . . . .	64
createSpatialDelaunayNetwork . . . . .	66
createSpatialEnrich . . . . .	67
createSpatialGrid . . . . .	68
createSpatialGrid_2D . . . . .	69
createSpatialGrid_3D . . . . .	70
createSpatialKNNnetwork . . . . .	71
createSpatialNetwork . . . . .	72
create_average_detection_DT . . . . .	73
create_average_DT . . . . .	74
create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs . . . . .	74
create_crossSection_object . . . . .	75
create_delaunayNetwork2D . . . . .	76
create_delaunayNetwork3D . . . . .	77
create_delaunayNetwork_deldir . . . . .	77
create_delaunayNetwork_geometry . . . . .	78
create_delaunayNetwork_geometry_3D . . . . .	78

create_delaunayNetwork_RTriangle . . . . .	79
create_genes_to_use_matrix . . . . .	79
create_KNNnetwork_dbscan . . . . .	80
create_screepplot . . . . .	80
crossSectionGenePlot . . . . .	81
crossSectionGenePlot3D . . . . .	82
crossSectionPlot . . . . .	83
crossSectionPlot3D . . . . .	84
decide_cluster_order . . . . .	85
detectSpatialCorGenes . . . . .	86
detectSpatialPatterns . . . . .	87
dimCellPlot . . . . .	88
dimCellPlot2D . . . . .	90
dimGenePlot . . . . .	93
dimGenePlot2D . . . . .	94
dimGenePlot3D . . . . .	96
dimPlot . . . . .	98
dimPlot2D . . . . .	100
dimPlot3D . . . . .	103
doHclust . . . . .	105
doHMRF . . . . .	106
doKmeans . . . . .	108
doLeidenCluster . . . . .	109
doLeidenSubCluster . . . . .	110
doLouvainCluster . . . . .	112
doLouvainCluster_community . . . . .	113
doLouvainCluster_multinet . . . . .	114
doLouvainSubCluster . . . . .	115
doLouvainSubCluster_community . . . . .	117
doLouvainSubCluster_multinet . . . . .	119
doRandomWalkCluster . . . . .	121
doSNNCluster . . . . .	122
do_permuttest_random . . . . .	123
DT_removeNA . . . . .	123
estimateImageBg . . . . .	124
exportGiottoViewer . . . . .	124
exprCellCellcom . . . . .	125
extractNearestNetwork . . . . .	127
fDataDT . . . . .	127
filterCellProximityGenes . . . . .	128
filterCombinations . . . . .	129
filterCPG . . . . .	130
filterDistributions . . . . .	131
filterGiotto . . . . .	132
findCellProximityGenes . . . . .	133
findCellProximityGenes_per_interaction . . . . .	135
findCPG . . . . .	135
findGiniMarkers . . . . .	137
findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all . . . . .	138
findMarkers . . . . .	140
findMarkers_one_vs_all . . . . .	141
findMastMarkers . . . . .	143

findMastMarkers_one_vs_all . . . . .	144
findNetworkNeighbors . . . . .	145
findScranMarkers . . . . .	145
findScranMarkers_one_vs_all . . . . .	146
find_grid_2D . . . . .	147
find_grid_3D . . . . .	147
find_grid_x . . . . .	148
find_grid_y . . . . .	148
find_grid_z . . . . .	148
FSV_show . . . . .	149
get10Xmatrix . . . . .	150
getClusterSimilarity . . . . .	150
getDendrogramSplits . . . . .	151
getDistinctColors . . . . .	152
getGiottoImage . . . . .	153
get_os . . . . .	153
giotto-class . . . . .	154
heatmSpatialCorGenes . . . . .	154
hyperGeometricEnrich . . . . .	156
insertCrossSectionGenePlot3D . . . . .	157
insertCrossSectionSpatPlot3D . . . . .	158
jackstrawPlot . . . . .	159
kmeans_binarize . . . . .	161
loadHMRF . . . . .	161
makeSignMatrixPAGE . . . . .	162
makeSignMatrixRank . . . . .	163
make_simulated_network . . . . .	163
mergeClusters . . . . .	164
my_aroundMeans . . . . .	165
my_growMeans . . . . .	165
my_rowMeans . . . . .	165
nnDT_to_kNN . . . . .	166
node_clusters . . . . .	166
normalizeGiotto . . . . .	167
PAGEEnrich . . . . .	168
pca_giotto . . . . .	169
pDataDT . . . . .	170
plotCCcomDotplot . . . . .	170
plotCCcomHeatmap . . . . .	171
plotCellProximityGenes . . . . .	172
plotCombineCCcom . . . . .	174
plotCombineCellCellCommunication . . . . .	175
plotCombineCellProximityGenes . . . . .	176
plotCombineCPG . . . . .	178
plotCPG . . . . .	179
plotGiottoImage . . . . .	180
plotHeatmap . . . . .	181
plotICG . . . . .	183
plotInteractionChangedGenes . . . . .	184
plotly_axis_scale_2D . . . . .	185
plotly_axis_scale_3D . . . . .	185
plotly_grid . . . . .	186

plotly_network	187
plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap	187
plotMetaDataHeatmap	189
plotPCA	191
plotPCA_2D	193
plotPCA_3D	195
plotRankSpatvsExpr	196
plotRecovery	197
plotRecovery_sub	198
plotStatDelaunayNetwork	199
plotTSNE	200
plotTSNE_2D	202
plotTSNE_3D	204
plotUMAP	205
plotUMAP_2D	207
plotUMAP_3D	209
print.giotto	210
rankEnrich	210
rankSpatialCorGroups	211
rank_binarize	212
readExprMatrix	212
readGiottoInstructions	213
removeCellAnnotation	214
removeGeneAnnotation	214
replaceGiottoInstructions	215
runPCA	215
runPCA_factominer	217
runPCA_prcomp_irlba	217
runTSNE	218
runUMAP	220
screePlot	222
selectPatternGenes	223
select_expression_values	224
select_spatialNetwork	224
set_giotto_python_path	225
show,giotto-method	225
showClusterDendrogram	225
showClusterHeatmap	226
showGiottoImageNames	228
showGiottoInstructions	228
showGrids	229
showNetworks	229
showPattern	230
showPattern2D	231
showPattern3D	232
showPatternGenes	233
showProcessingSteps	234
showSaveParameters	235
showSpatialCorGenes	235
signPCA	236
silhouetteRank	238
spatCellCellcom	239

spatCellPlot . . . . .	240
spatCellPlot2D . . . . .	242
spatDimCellPlot . . . . .	245
spatDimCellPlot2D . . . . .	247
spatDimGenePlot . . . . .	252
spatDimGenePlot2D . . . . .	254
spatDimGenePlot3D . . . . .	257
spatDimPlot . . . . .	259
spatDimPlot2D . . . . .	262
spatDimPlot3D . . . . .	266
spatGenePlot . . . . .	269
spatGenePlot2D . . . . .	271
spatGenePlot3D . . . . .	274
spatialAEH . . . . .	276
spatialDE . . . . .	277
spatNetwDistributions . . . . .	278
spatNetwDistributionsDistance . . . . .	279
spatNetwDistributionsKneighbors . . . . .	280
spatPlot . . . . .	281
spatPlot2D . . . . .	283
spatPlot3D . . . . .	286
spat_fish_func . . . . .	288
spat_OR_func . . . . .	289
specificCellCellcommunicationScores . . . . .	289
split_dendrogram_in_two . . . . .	290
standardise_giotto . . . . .	291
stitchFieldCoordinates . . . . .	291
stitchTileCoordinates . . . . .	292
subClusterCells . . . . .	293
subsetGiotto . . . . .	295
subsetGiottoLocs . . . . .	295
trendSceek . . . . .	296
updateGiottoImage . . . . .	297
viewHMRFresults . . . . .	298
viewHMRFresults2D . . . . .	299
viewHMRFresults3D . . . . .	300
violinPlot . . . . .	301
visDimGenePlot . . . . .	302
visDimGenePlot_2D_ggplot . . . . .	304
visDimGenePlot_3D_plotly . . . . .	305
visDimPlot . . . . .	307
visDimPlot_2D_ggplot . . . . .	309
visDimPlot_2D_plotly . . . . .	311
visDimPlot_3D_plotly . . . . .	313
visForceLayoutPlot . . . . .	314
visGenePlot . . . . .	316
visGenePlot_2D_ggplot . . . . .	318
visGenePlot_3D_plotly . . . . .	319
visPlot . . . . .	321
visPlot_2D_ggplot . . . . .	323
visPlot_2D_plotly . . . . .	326
visPlot_3D_plotly . . . . .	327

visSpatDimGenePlot . . . . .	329
visSpatDimGenePlot_2D . . . . .	332
visSpatDimGenePlot_3D . . . . .	334
visSpatDimPlot . . . . .	336
visSpatDimPlot_2D . . . . .	338
visSpatDimPlot_3D . . . . .	341
writeHMRFresults . . . . .	343
write_giotto_viewer_annotation . . . . .	343
write_giotto_viewer_dim_reduction . . . . .	344
write_giotto_viewer_numeric_annotation . . . . .	345

<b>Index</b>	<b>346</b>
--------------	------------

---

addCellIntMetadata	<i>addCellIntMetadata</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

---

## Description

Creates an additional metadata column with information about interacting and non-interacting cell types of the selected cell-cell interaction.

## Usage

```
addCellIntMetadata(
  gobject,
  spatial_network = "spatial_network",
  cluster_column,
  cell_interaction,
  name = "select_int",
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>spatial_network</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	column of cell types
<code>cell_interaction</code>	cell-cell interaction to use
<code>name</code>	name for the new metadata column
<code>return_gobject</code>	return an updated giotto object

## Details

This function will create an additional metadata column which selects interacting cell types for a specific cell-cell interaction. For example, if you want to color interacting astrocytes and oligodendrocytes it will create a new metadata column with the values "select\_astrocytes", "select\_oligodendrocytes", "other\_astrocytes", "other\_oligodendrocytes" and "other". Where "other" is all other cell types found within the selected cell type column.



**Value**

Giotto object

**Examples**

```
addCellIntMetadata(gobject)
```

---

addCellMetadata	<i>addCellMetadata</i>
-----------------	------------------------

---

**Description**

adds cell metadata to the giotto object

**Usage**

```
addCellMetadata(
  gobject,
  new_metadata,
  vector_name = NULL,
  by_column = FALSE,
  column_cell_ID = NULL
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
new_metadata	new cell metadata to use (data.table, data.frame, ...)
vector_name	(optional) custom name if you provide a single vector
by_column	merge metadata based on cell_ID column in pDataDT (default = FALSE)
column_cell_ID	column name of new metadata to use if by_column = TRUE

**Details**

You can add additional cell metadata in two manners:

- 1. Provide a data.table or data.frame with cell annotations in the same order as the cell\_ID column in pDataDT(gobject)
- 2. Provide a data.table or data.frame with cell annotations and specify which column contains the cell IDs, these cell IDs need to match with the cell\_ID column in pDataDT(gobject)

**Value**

giotto object

**Examples**

```
addCellMetadata(gobject)
```

---

addCellStatistics	<i>addCellStatistics</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

---

## Description

adds cells statistics to the giotto object

## Usage

```
addCellStatistics(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  detection_threshold = 0,  
  return_gobject = TRUE  
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>detection_threshold</code>	detection threshold to consider a gene detected
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

## Details

This function will add the following statistics to cell metadata:

- `nr_genes`: Denotes in how many genes are detected per cell
- `perc_genes`: Denotes what percentage of genes is detected per cell
- `total_expr`: Shows the total sum of gene expression per cell

## Value

giotto object if `return_gobject = TRUE`

## Examples

```
addCellStatistics(gobject)
```

---

addGeneMetadata	<i>addGeneMetadata</i>
-----------------	------------------------

---

### Description

adds gene metadata to the giotto object

### Usage

```
addGeneMetadata(gobject, new_metadata, by_column = F, column_gene_ID = NULL)
```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>new_metadata</code>	new metadata to use
<code>by_column</code>	merge metadata based on gene_ID column in fDataDT
<code>column_gene_ID</code>	column name of new metadata to use if <code>by_column = TRUE</code>

### Details

You can add additional gene metadata in two manners: 1. Provide a data.table or data.frame with gene annotations in the same order as the gene\_ID column in fDataDT(gobject) 2. Provide a data.table or data.frame with gene annotations and specify which column contains the gene IDs, these gene IDs need to match with the gene\_ID column in fDataDT(gobject)

### Value

giotto object

### Examples

```
addGeneMetadata(gobject)
```

---

addGenesPerc	<i>addGenesPerc</i>
--------------	---------------------

---

### Description

calculates the total percentage of (normalized) counts for a subset of selected genes

### Usage

```
addGenesPerc(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes = NULL,
  vector_name = "gene_perc",
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject            giotto object  
 expression\_values       expression values to use  
 genes              vector of selected genes  
 vector\_name        column name as seen in pDataDT()  
 return\_gobject    boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

**Value**

giotto object if return\_gobject = TRUE, else a vector with

**Examples**

```
addGenesPerc(gobject)
```

---

addGeneStatistics	<i>addGeneStatistics</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

---

**Description**

adds gene statistics to the giotto object

**Usage**

```
addGeneStatistics(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  detection_threshold = 0,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject            giotto object  
 expression\_values       expression values to use  
 detection\_threshold       detection threshold to consider a gene detected  
 return\_gobject    boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

**Details**

This function will add the following statistics to gene metadata:

- nr\_cells: Denotes in how many cells the gene is detected
- per\_cells: Denotes in what percentage of cells the gene is detected
- total\_expr: Shows the total sum of gene expression in all cells
- mean\_expr: Average gene expression in all cells
- mean\_expr\_det: Average gene expression in cells with detectable levels of the gene

**Value**

giotto object if return\_gobject = TRUE

**Examples**

```
addGeneStatistics(gobject)
```

---

addGiottoImage	<i>addGiottoImage</i>
----------------	-----------------------

---

**Description**

Adds giotto image objects to your giotto object

**Usage**

```
addGiottoImage(gobject, images)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
images	list of giotto image objects, see <a href="#">createGiottoImage</a>

**Value**

an updated Giotto object with access to the list of images

**Examples**

```
addGiottoImage(mg_object)
```

---

addGiottoImageToSpatPlot	<i>addGiottoImageToSpatPlot</i>
--------------------------	---------------------------------

---

**Description**

Add a giotto image to a spatial ggplot object post creation

**Usage**

```
addGiottoImageToSpatPlot(spatpl = NULL, gimage = NULL)
```

**Arguments**

spatpl	a spatial ggplot object
gimage	a giotto image, see <a href="#">createGiottoImage</a>

**Value**

an updated spatial ggplot object

**Examples**

```
addGiottoImageToSpatPlot(mg_object)
```

---

addHMRF	<i>addHMRF</i>
---------	----------------

---

**Description**

Add selected results from doHMRF to the giotto object

**Usage**

```
addHMRF(gobject, HMRFoutput, k = NULL, betas_to_add = NULL, hmrf_name = NULL)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
HMRFoutput	HMRF output from doHMRF()
k	number of domains
betas_to_add	results from different betas that you want to add
hmrf_name	specify a custom name

**Details**

Description ...

**Value**

giotto object

**Examples**

```
addHMRF(gobject)
```

---

addNetworkLayout	<i>addNetworkLayout</i>
------------------	-------------------------

---

## Description

Add a network layout for a selected nearest neighbor network

## Usage

```
addNetworkLayout(  
  gobject,  
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",  
  network_name = "sNN.pca",  
  layout_type = c("drl"),  
  options_list = NULL,  
  layout_name = "layout",  
  return_gobject = TRUE  
)
```

## Arguments

gobject	giotto object
nn_network_to_use	kNN or sNN
network_name	name of NN network to be used
layout_type	layout algorithm to use
options_list	list of options for selected layout
layout_name	name for layout
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

## Details

This function creates layout coordinates based on the provided kNN or sNN. Currently only the force-directed graph layout "drl", see [layout\\_with\\_drl](#), is implemented. This provides an alternative to tSNE or UMAP based visualizations.

## Value

giotto object with updated layout for selected NN network

## Examples

```
addNetworkLayout(gobject)
```

---

addStatistics	<i>addStatistics</i>
---------------	----------------------

---

### Description

adds genes and cells statistics to the giotto object

### Usage

```
addStatistics(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  detection_threshold = 0,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

### Arguments

gobject            giotto object

expression\_values  
                  expression values to use

detection\_threshold  
                  detection threshold to consider a gene detected

return\_gobject    boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

### Details

See [addGeneStatistics](#) and [addCellStatistics](#)

### Value

giotto object if return\_gobject = TRUE, else a list with results

### Examples

```
addStatistics(gobject)
```

---

adjustGiottoMatrix	<i>adjustGiottoMatrix</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

---

### Description

normalize and/or scale expresion values of Giotto object



**Usage**

```
adjustGiottoMatrix(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  batch_columns = NULL,
  covariate_columns = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  update_slot = c("custom")
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
batch_columns	metadata columns that represent different batch (max = 2)
covariate_columns	metadata columns that represent covariates to regress out
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
update_slot	expression slot that will be updated (default = custom)

**Details**

This function implements the [removeBatchEffect](#) function to remove known batch effects and to adjust expression values according to provided covariates.

**Value**

giotto object

**Examples**

```
adjustGiottoMatrix(gobject)
```

---

```
all_plots_save_function
      all_plots_save_function
```

---

**Description**

Function to automatically save plots to directory of interest

**Usage**

```
all_plots_save_function(
  gobject,
  plot_object,
  save_dir = NULL,
  save_folder = NULL,
  save_name = NULL,
```

```

    default_save_name = "giotto_plot",
    save_format = NULL,
    show_saved_plot = F,
    ncol = 1,
    nrow = 1,
    scale = 1,
    base_width = NULL,
    base_height = NULL,
    base_aspect_ratio = NULL,
    units = NULL,
    dpi = NULL,
    limitsize = TRUE,
    ...
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>plot_object</code>	object to plot
<code>save_dir</code>	directory to save to
<code>save_folder</code>	folder in <code>save_dir</code> to save to
<code>save_name</code>	name of plot
<code>default_save_name</code>	default name to save a plot
<code>save_format</code>	format (e.g. png, tiff, pdf, ...)
<code>show_saved_plot</code>	load & display the saved plot
<code>ncol</code>	number of columns
<code>nrow</code>	number of rows
<code>scale</code>	scale
<code>base_width</code>	width
<code>base_height</code>	height
<code>base_aspect_ratio</code>	aspect ratio
<code>units</code>	units
<code>dpi</code>	Plot resolution
<code>limitsize</code>	When TRUE (the default), ggsave will not save images larger than 50x50 inches, to prevent the common error of specifying dimensions in pixels.
<code>...</code>	additional parameters to <code>ggplot_save_function</code> or <code>general_save_function</code>

### See Also

[general\\_save\\_function](#)

### Examples

```
all_plots_save_function(gobject)
```

---

annotateGiotto	<i>annotateGiotto</i>
----------------	-----------------------

---

## Description

Converts cluster results into provided annotation.

## Usage

```
annotateGiotto(
  gobject,
  annotation_vector = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  name = "cell_types"
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>annotation_vector</code>	named annotation vector (names = cluster ids)
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column to convert to annotation names
<code>name</code>	new name for annotation column

## Details

You need to specify which (cluster) column you want to annotate and you need to provide an annotation vector like this:

- 1. identify the cell type of each cluster
- 2. create a vector of these cell types, e.g. `cell_types = c('T-cell', 'B-cell', 'Stromal')`
- 3. provide original cluster names to previous vector, e.g. `names(cell_types) = c(2, 1, 3)`

## Value

giotto object

## Examples

```
annotateGiotto(gobject)
```

---

annotateSpatialGrid     *annotateSpatialGrid*

---

### Description

annotate spatial grid with cell ID and cell metadata (optional)

### Usage

```
annotateSpatialGrid(
  gobject,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  cluster_columns = NULL
)
```

### Arguments

gobject                Giotto object  
 spatial\_grid\_name       name of spatial grid, see [showGrids](#)  
 cluster\_columns        names of cell metadata, see [pDataDT](#)

### Value

annotated spatial grid data.table

### Examples

```
annotateSpatialGrid()
```

---

annotateSpatialNetwork  
                           *annotateSpatialNetwork*

---

### Description

Annotate spatial network with cell metadata information.

### Usage

```
annotateSpatialNetwork(
  gobject,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  cluster_column,
  create_full_network = F
)
```

### Arguments

`gobject`                giotto object  
`spatial_network_name`        name of spatial network to use  
`cluster_column`    name of column to use for clusters  
`create_full_network`        convert from reduced to full network representation

### Value

annotated network in data.table format

### Examples

```
annotateSpatialNetwork(gobject)
```

---

```
annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_2D
      annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_2D
```

---

### Description

annotate spatial locations with 2D spatial grid information

### Usage

```
annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_2D(spatloc, spatgrid)
```

### Arguments

`spatloc`                `spatial_locs` slot from giotto object  
`spatgrid`                selected `spatial_grid` slot from giotto object

### Value

annotated spatial location data.table

### Examples

```
annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_2D()
```

---

```

annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_3D
    annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_3D

```

---

**Description**

annotate spatial locations with 3D spatial grid information

**Usage**

```
annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_3D(spatloc, spatgrid)
```

**Arguments**

spatloc	spatial_locs slot from giotto object
spatgrid	selected spatial_grid slot from giotto object

**Value**

annotated spatial location data.table

**Examples**

```
annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_3D()
```

---

```

average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups
    average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups

```

---

**Description**

calculate average expression per cluster

**Usage**

```

average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups(
  gobject,
  cluster_column = "cell_types",
  gene_set_1,
  gene_set_2
)

```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object to use
cluster_column	cluster column with cell type information
gene_set_1	first specific gene set from gene pairs
gene_set_2	second specific gene set from gene pairs

**Details**

Details will follow soon.

**Value**

data.table with average expression scores for each cluster

**Examples**

```
average_gene_expression_in_groups(gobject)
```

---

binSpect	<i>binSpect</i>
----------	-----------------

---

**Description**

Previously: binGetSpatialGenes. BinSpect (Binary Spatial Extraction of genes) is a fast computational method that identifies genes with a spatially coherent expression pattern.

**Usage**

```
binSpect(
  gobject,
  bin_method = c("kmeans", "rank"),
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  subset_genes = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  nstart = 3,
  iter_max = 10,
  percentage_rank = 30,
  do_fisher_test = TRUE,
  calc_hub = FALSE,
  hub_min_int = 3,
  get_av_expr = TRUE,
  get_high_expr = TRUE,
  do_parallel = TRUE,
  cores = NA,
  verbose = T
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
bin_method	method to binarize gene expression
expression_values	expression values to use
subset_genes	only select a subset of genes to test
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use (default = 'spatial_network')
nstart	kmeans: nstart parameter

<code>iter_max</code>	kmeans: iter.max parameter
<code>percentage_rank</code>	percentage of top cells for binarization
<code>do_fisher_test</code>	perform fisher test
<code>calc_hub</code>	calculate the number of hub cells
<code>hub_min_int</code>	minimum number of cell-cell interactions for a hub cell
<code>get_av_expr</code>	calculate the average expression per gene of the high expressing cells
<code>get_high_expr</code>	calculate the number of high expressing cells per gene
<code>do_parallel</code>	run calculations in parallel with mclapply
<code>cores</code>	number of cores to use if <code>do_parallel = TRUE</code>
<code>verbose</code>	be verbose

## Details

We provide two ways to identify spatial genes based on gene expression binarization. Both methods are identical except for how binarization is performed.

- 1. binarize: Each gene is binarized (0 or 1) in each cell with **kmeans** ( $k = 2$ ) or based on **rank** percentile
- 2. network: All cells are connected through a spatial network based on the physical coordinates
- 3. contingency table: A contingency table is calculated based on all edges of neighboring cells and the binarized expression (0-0, 0-1, 1-0 or 1-1)
- 4. For each gene an odds-ratio (OR) and fisher.test (optional) is calculated

Other statistics are provided (optional):

- Number of cells with high expression (binary = 1)
- Average expression of each gene within high expressing cells
- Number of hub cells, these are high expressing cells that have a user defined number of high expressing neighbors

By selecting a subset of likely spatial genes (e.g. soft thresholding highly variable genes) or using multiple cores can accelerate the speed.

## Value

data.table with results (see details)

## Examples

```
binSpect(gobject)
```



---

calculateHVG	<i>calculateHVG</i>
--------------	---------------------

---

**Description**

compute highly variable genes

**Usage**

```
calculateHVG(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  method = c("cov_groups", "cov_loess"),
  reverse_log_scale = FALSE,
  logbase = 2,
  expression_threshold = 0,
  nr_expression_groups = 20,
  zscore_threshold = 1.5,
  HVGname = "hvg",
  difference_in_cov = 0.1,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "HVGplot",
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
method	method to calculate highly variable genes
reverse_log_scale	reverse log-scale of expression values (default = FALSE)
logbase	if reverse_log_scale is TRUE, which log base was used?
expression_threshold	expression threshold to consider a gene detected
nr_expression_groups	number of expression groups for cov_groups
zscore_threshold	zscore to select hvg for cov_groups
HVGname	name for highly variable genes in cell metadata
difference_in_cov	minimum difference in coefficient of variance required
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object



**Arguments**

gobject            giotto object  
expression\_values    expression values to use  
metadata\_cols    annotation columns found in pDataDT(gobject)  
selected\_genes    subset of genes to use

**Value**

data.table with average expression values for each gene per (combined) annotation

**Examples**

```
calculateMetaTable(gobject)
```

---

calculateMetaTableCells  
*calculateMetaTableCells*

---

**Description**

calculates the average metadata values for one or more (combined) annotation columns.

**Usage**

```
calculateMetaTableCells(  
  gobject,  
  value_cols = NULL,  
  metadata_cols = NULL,  
  spat_enr_names = NULL  
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject            giotto object  
value\_cols        metadata or enrichment value columns to use  
metadata\_cols    annotation columns found in pDataDT(gobject)  
spat\_enr\_names    which spatial enrichment results to include

**Value**

data.table with average metadata values per (combined) annotation

**Examples**

```
calculateMetaTableCells(gobject)
```

---

```
calculate_distance_and_weight
      calculate_distance_and_weight
```

---

### Description

calculate\_distance\_and\_weight

### Usage

```
calculate_distance_and_weight(
  networkDT = NULL,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  sdimz = "sdimz",
  d2_or_d3 = c(2, 3)
)
```

### Arguments

networkDT	spatial network as data.table
sdimx	spatial dimension x
sdimy	spatial dimension y
sdimz	spatial dimension z
d2_or_d3	number of dimensions

---

```
cellProximityBarplot  cellProximityBarplot
```

---

### Description

Create barplot from cell-cell proximity scores

### Usage

```
cellProximityBarplot(
  gobject,
  CPscore,
  min_orig_ints = 5,
  min_sim_ints = 5,
  p_val = 0.05,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "cellProximityBarplot"
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>CPscore</code>	CPscore, output from <code>cellProximityEnrichment()</code>
<code>min_orig_ints</code>	filter on minimum original cell-cell interactions
<code>min_sim_ints</code>	filter on minimum simulated cell-cell interactions
<code>p_val</code>	p-value
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

**Details**

This function creates a barplot that shows the spatial proximity enrichment or depletion of cell type pairs.

**Value**

ggplot barplot

**Examples**

```
cellProximityBarplot(CPscore)
```

---

```
cellProximityEnrichment
      cellProximityEnrichment
```

---

**Description**

Compute cell-cell interaction enrichment (observed vs expected)

**Usage**

```
cellProximityEnrichment(
  gobject,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  cluster_column,
  number_of_simulations = 1000,
  adjust_method = c("none", "fdr", "bonferroni", "BH", "holm", "hochberg", "hommel",
    "BY")
)
```

**Arguments**

**gobject**                giotto object  
**spatial\_network\_name**                name of spatial network to use  
**cluster\_column**    name of column to use for clusters  
**number\_of\_simulations**                number of simulations to create expected observations  
**adjust\_method**    method to adjust p.values

**Details**

Spatial proximity enrichment or depletion between pairs of cell types is calculated by calculating the observed over the expected frequency of cell-cell proximity interactions. The expected frequency is the average frequency calculated from a number of spatial network simulations. Each individual simulation is obtained by reshuffling the cell type labels of each node (cell) in the spatial network.

**Value**

List of cell Proximity scores (CPscores) in data.table format. The first data.table (raw\_sim\_table) shows the raw observations of both the original and simulated networks. The second data.table (enrichm\_res) shows the enrichment results.

**Examples**

```
cellProximityEnrichment(gobject)
```

---

```
cellProximityHeatmap    cellProximityHeatmap
```

---

**Description**

Create heatmap from cell-cell proximity scores

**Usage**

```

cellProximityHeatmap(
  gobject,
  CPscore,
  scale = T,
  order_cell_types = T,
  color_breaks = NULL,
  color_names = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "cellProximityHeatmap"
)

```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>CPscore</code>	CPscore, output from <code>cellProximityEnrichment()</code>
<code>scale</code>	scale cell-cell proximity interaction scores
<code>order_cell_types</code>	order cell types based on enrichment correlation
<code>color_breaks</code>	numerical vector of length 3 to represent min, mean and maximum
<code>color_names</code>	character color vector of length 3
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

**Details**

This function creates a heatmap that shows the spatial proximity enrichment or depletion of cell type pairs.

**Value**

ggplot heatmap

**Examples**

```
cellProximityHeatmap(CPscore)
```

---

```
cellProximityNetwork  cellProximityNetwork
```

---

**Description**

Create network from cell-cell proximity scores

**Usage**

```
cellProximityNetwork(
  gobject,
  CPscore,
  remove_self_edges = FALSE,
  self_loop_strength = 0.1,
  color_depletion = "lightgreen",
  color_enrichment = "red",
  rescale_edge_weights = TRUE,
  edge_weight_range_depletion = c(0.1, 1),
  edge_weight_range_enrichment = c(1, 5),
  layout = c("Fruchterman", "DrL", "Kamada-Kawai"),
```

```

only_show_enrichment_edges = F,
edge_width_range = c(0.1, 2),
node_size = 4,
node_text_size = 6,
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "cellProximityNetwork"
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>CPscore</code>	CPscore, output from <code>cellProximityEnrichment()</code>
<code>remove_self_edges</code>	remove enrichment/depletion edges with itself
<code>self_loop_strength</code>	size of self-loops
<code>color_depletion</code>	color for depleted cell-cell interactions
<code>color_enrichment</code>	color for enriched cell-cell interactions
<code>rescale_edge_weights</code>	rescale edge weights (boolean)
<code>edge_weight_range_depletion</code>	numerical vector of length 2 to rescale depleted edge weights
<code>edge_weight_range_enrichment</code>	numerical vector of length 2 to rescale enriched edge weights
<code>layout</code>	layout algorithm to use to draw nodes and edges
<code>only_show_enrichment_edges</code>	show only the enriched pairwise scores
<code>edge_width_range</code>	range of edge width
<code>node_size</code>	size of nodes
<code>node_text_size</code>	size of node labels
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

### Details

This function creates a network that shows the spatial proximity enrichment or depletion of cell type pairs.



**Value**

igraph plot

**Examples**

```
cellProximityNetwork(CPscore)
```

---

```
cellProximitySpatPlot cellProximitySpatPlot
```

---

**Description**

Visualize 2D cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates in ggplot mode

**Usage**

```
cellProximitySpatPlot(gobject, ...)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>...</code>	additional parameters
<code>interaction_name</code>	cell-cell interaction name
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell clusters
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>show_other_cells</code>	decide if show cells not in network
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>show_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>grid_color</code>	color of spatial grid
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>coord_fix_ratio</code>	fix ratio between x and y-axis
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>point_size_select</code>	size of selected points

point_select_border_col	border color of selected points
point_select_border_stroke	stroke size of selected points
point_size_other	size of other points
point_other_border_col	border color of other points
point_other_border_stroke	stroke size of other points
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

### Details

Description of parameters.

### Value

ggplot

### See Also

[cellProximitySpatPlot2D](#) and [cellProximitySpatPlot3D](#) for 3D

### Examples

```
cellProximitySpatPlot(gobject)
```

---

```
cellProximitySpatPlot2D
      cellProximitySpatPlot2D
```

---

### Description

Visualize 2D cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates in ggplot mode

### Usage

```
cellProximitySpatPlot2D(
  gobject,
  interaction_name = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  cell_color = NULL,
```

```

cell_color_code = NULL,
color_as_factor = T,
show_other_cells = F,
show_network = F,
show_other_network = F,
network_color = NULL,
spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
show_grid = F,
grid_color = NULL,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
coord_fix_ratio = 1,
show_legend = T,
point_size_select = 2,
point_select_border_col = "black",
point_select_border_stroke = 0.05,
point_size_other = 1,
point_alpha_other = 0.3,
point_other_border_col = "lightgrey",
point_other_border_stroke = 0.01,
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "cellProximitySpatPlot2D"
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>interaction_name</code>	cell-cell interaction name
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell clusters
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>show_other_cells</code>	decide if show cells not in network
<code>show_network</code>	show spatial network of selected cells
<code>show_other_network</code>	show spatial network of not selected cells
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>show_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>grid_color</code>	color of spatial grid

spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
coord_fix_ratio	fix ratio between x and y-axis
show_legend	show legend
point_size_select	size of selected points
point_select_border_col	border color of selected points
point_select_border_stroke	stroke size of selected points
point_size_other	size of other points
point_alpha_other	opacity of other points
point_other_border_col	border color of other points
point_other_border_stroke	stroke size of other points
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

### Details

Description of parameters.

### Value

ggplot

### Examples

```
cellProximitySpatPlot2D(gobject)
```

---

cellProximitySpatPlot3D	<i>cellProximitySpatPlot2D</i>
-------------------------	--------------------------------

---

### Description

Visualize 3D cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates in plotly mode

**Usage**

```

cellProximitySpatPlot3D(
  gobject,
  interaction_name = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  sdimz = "sdimz",
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  show_other_cells = T,
  show_network = T,
  show_other_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  show_legend = T,
  point_size_select = 4,
  point_size_other = 2,
  point_alpha_other = 0.5,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "cellProximitySpatPlot3D",
  ...
)

```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>interaction_name</code>	cell-cell interaction name
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell clusters
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>sdimz</code>	z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimz')
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor

show_other_cells	decide if show cells not in network
show_network	show spatial network of selected cells
show_other_network	show spatial network of not selected cells
network_color	color of spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
show_grid	show spatial grid
grid_color	color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
show_legend	show legend
point_size_select	size of selected points
point_size_other	size of other points
point_alpha_other	opacity of other points
axis_scale	scale of axis
custom_ratio	custom ratio of axes
x_ticks	ticks on x-axis
y_ticks	ticks on y-axis
z_ticks	ticks on z-axis
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return plotly object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
...	additional parameters

## Details

Description of parameters.

## Value

plotly

## Examples

```
cellProximitySpatPlot3D(gobject)
```

---

cellProximityVisPlot    *cellProximityVisPlot*


---

## Description

Visualize cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates

## Usage

```
cellProximityVisPlot(
  gobject,
  interaction_name = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  show_other_cells = F,
  show_network = F,
  show_other_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  coord_fix_ratio = 1,
  show_legend = T,
  point_size_select = 2,
  point_select_border_col = "black",
  point_select_border_stroke = 0.05,
  point_size_other = 1,
  point_alpha_other = 0.3,
  point_other_border_col = "lightgrey",
  point_other_border_stroke = 0.01,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>interaction_name</code>	cell-cell interaction name
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell clusters

<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>sdimz</code>	z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimz')
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>show_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>grid_color</code>	color of spatial grid
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>coord_fix_ratio</code>	fix ratio between x and y-axis
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>point_size_select</code>	size of selected points
<code>point_select_border_col</code>	border color of selected points
<code>point_select_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of selected points
<code>point_size_other</code>	size of other points
<code>point_other_border_col</code>	border color of other points
<code>point_other_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of other points

## Details

Description of parameters.

## Value

ggplot or plotly

## Examples

```
cellProximityVisPlot(gobject)
```



---

```
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_ggplot
      cellProximityVisPlot_2D_ggplot
```

---

## Description

Visualize 2D cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates in ggplot mode

## Usage

```
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_ggplot(
  gobject,
  interaction_name = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  show_other_cells = F,
  show_network = F,
  show_other_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  coord_fix_ratio = 1,
  show_legend = T,
  point_size_select = 2,
  point_select_border_col = "black",
  point_select_border_stroke = 0.05,
  point_size_other = 1,
  point_alpha_other = 0.3,
  point_other_border_col = "lightgrey",
  point_other_border_stroke = 0.01,
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>interaction_name</code>	cell-cell interaction name
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell clusters
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors

color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
show_other_cells	decide if show cells not in network
show_network	show underlying spatial network
network_color	color of spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
show_grid	show spatial grid
grid_color	color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
coord_fix_ratio	fix ratio between x and y-axis
show_legend	show legend
point_size_select	size of selected points
point_select_border_col	border color of selected points
point_select_border_stroke	stroke size of selected points
point_size_other	size of other points
point_other_border_col	border color of other points
point_other_border_stroke	stroke size of other points

## Details

Description of parameters.

## Value

ggplot

## Examples

```
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_ggplot(gobject)
```

---

```
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_plotly
      cellProximityVisPlot_2D_plotly
```

---

## Description

Visualize 2D cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates in plotly mode

## Usage

```
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_plotly(
  gobject,
  interaction_name = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  show_other_cells = F,
  show_network = F,
  show_other_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  show_legend = T,
  point_size_select = 2,
  point_size_other = 1,
  point_alpha_other = 0.3,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>interaction_name</code>	cell-cell interaction name
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell clusters
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors

color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
show_other_cells	decide if show cells not in network
show_network	show underlying spatial network
network_color	color of spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
show_grid	show spatial grid
grid_color	color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
show_legend	show legend
point_size_select	size of selected points
coord_fix_ratio	fix ratio between x and y-axis

**Details**

Description of parameters.

**Value**

plotly

**Examples**

```
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_plotly(gobject)
```

---

```
cellProximityVisPlot_3D_plotly
  cellProximityVisPlot_3D_plotly
```

---

**Description**

Visualize 3D cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates in plotly mode

**Usage**

```
cellProximityVisPlot_3D_plotly(
  gobject,
  interaction_name = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
```

```

    color_as_factor = T,
    show_other_cells = F,
    show_network = F,
    show_other_network = F,
    network_color = NULL,
    spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
    show_grid = F,
    grid_color = NULL,
    spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
    show_legend = T,
    point_size_select = 2,
    point_size_other = 1,
    point_alpha_other = 0.5,
    axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
    custom_ratio = NULL,
    x_ticks = NULL,
    y_ticks = NULL,
    z_ticks = NULL,
    ...
)

```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>interaction_name</code>	cell-cell interaction name
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell clusters
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>sdimz</code>	z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimz')
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>show_other_cells</code>	decide if show cells not in network
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>show_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>grid_color</code>	color of spatial grid
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>point_size_select</code>	size of selected points
<code>coord_fix_ratio</code>	fix ratio between x and y-axis

**Details**

Description of parameters.

**Value**

plotly

**Examples**

```
cellProximityVisPlot_3D_plotly(gobject)
```

---

changeGiottoInstructions

*changeGiottoInstructions*

---

**Description**

Function to change one or more instructions from giotto object

**Usage**

```
changeGiottoInstructions(  
  gobject,  
  params = NULL,  
  new_values = NULL,  
  return_gobject = TRUE  
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
params	parameter(s) to change
new_values	new value(s) for parameter(s)
return_gobject	(boolean) return giotto object

**Value**

giotto object with one or more changed instructions

**Examples**

```
changeGiottoInstructions()
```

---

changeImageBg	<i>changeImageBg</i>
---------------	----------------------

---

**Description**

Function to change the background color of a magick image plot to another color

**Usage**

```
changeImageBg(
  mg_object,
  bg_color,
  perc_range = 10,
  new_color = "#FFFFFF",
  new_name = NULL
)
```

**Arguments**

mg_object	magick image or giotto image object
bg_color	estimated current background color
perc_range	range around estimated background color to include (percentage)
new_color	new background color
new_name	change name of Giotto image

**Value**

magick image or giotto image object with updated background color

**Examples**

```
changeImageBg(mg_object)
```

---

clusterCells	<i>clusterCells</i>
--------------	---------------------

---

**Description**

cluster cells using a variety of different methods

**Usage**

```
clusterCells(
  gobject,
  cluster_method = c("leiden", "louvain_community", "louvain_multinet", "randomwalk",
    "sNNclust", "kmeans", "hierarchical"),
  name = "cluster_name",
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
```

```

pyth_leid_resolution = 1,
pyth_leid_weight_col = "weight",
pyth_leid_part_type = c("RBConfigurationVertexPartition",
  "ModularityVertexPartition"),
pyth_leid_init_memb = NULL,
pyth_leid_iterations = 1000,
pyth_louv_resolution = 1,
pyth_louv_weight_col = NULL,
python_louv_random = F,
python_path = NULL,
louvain_gamma = 1,
louvain_omega = 1,
walk_steps = 4,
walk_clusters = 10,
walk_weights = NA,
sNNclust_k = 20,
sNNclust_eps = 4,
sNNclust_minPts = 16,
borderPoints = TRUE,
expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
genes_to_use = NULL,
dim_reduction_to_use = c("cells", "pca", "umap", "tsne"),
dim_reduction_name = "pca",
dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
distance_method = c("original", "pearson", "spearman", "euclidean", "maximum",
  "manhattan", "canberra", "binary", "minkowski"),
km_centers = 10,
km_iter_max = 100,
km_nstart = 1000,
km_algorithm = "Hartigan-Wong",
hc_agglomeration_method = c("ward.D2", "ward.D", "single", "complete", "average",
  "mcquitty", "median", "centroid"),
hc_k = 10,
hc_h = NULL,
return_gobject = TRUE,
set_seed = T,
seed_number = 1234
)

```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>cluster_method</code>	community cluster method to use
<code>name</code>	name for new clustering result
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use
<code>pyth_leid_resolution</code>	resolution for leiden
<code>pyth_leid_weight_col</code>	column to use for weights



pyth_leid_part_type	partition type to use
pyth_leid_init_memb	initial membership
pyth_leid_iterations	number of iterations
pyth_louv_resolution	resolution for louvain
pyth_louv_weight_col	python louvain param: weight column
python_louv_random	python louvain param: random
python_path	specify specific path to python if required
louvain_gamma	louvain param: gamma or resolution
louvain_omega	louvain param: omega
walk_steps	randomwalk: number of steps
walk_clusters	randomwalk: number of clusters
walk_weights	randomwalk: weight column
sNNclust_k	SNNclust: k neighbors to use
sNNclust_eps	SNNclust: epsilon
sNNclust_minPts	SNNclust: min points
borderPoints	SNNclust: border points
expression_values	expression values to use
genes_to_use	= NULL,
dim_reduction_to_use	dimension reduction to use
dim_reduction_name	name of reduction 'pca',
dimensions_to_use	dimensions to use
distance_method	distance method
km_centers	kmeans centers
km_iter_max	kmeans iterations
km_nstart	kmeans random starting points
km_algorithm	kmeans algorithm
hc_agglomeration_method	hierarchical clustering method
hc_k	hierachical number of clusters
hc_h	hierarchical tree cutoff
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
set_seed	set seed
seed_number	number for seed

**Details**

Wrapper for the different clustering methods.

**Value**

giotto object with new clusters appended to cell metadata

**See Also**

[doLeidenCluster](#), [doLouvainCluster\\_community](#), [doLouvainCluster\\_multinet](#), [doLouvainCluster](#), [doRandomWalkCluster](#), [doSNNCluster](#), [doKmeans](#), [doHclust](#)

**Examples**

```
clusterCells(gobject)
```

---

```
clusterSpatialCorGenes
```

```
clusterSpatialCorGenes
```

---

**Description**

Cluster based on spatially correlated genes

**Usage**

```
clusterSpatialCorGenes(
  spatCorObject,
  name = "spat_clus",
  hclust_method = "ward.D",
  k = 10,
  return_obj = TRUE
)
```

**Arguments**

spatCorObject	spatial correlation object
name	name for spatial clustering results
hclust_method	method for hierarchical clustering
k	number of clusters to extract
return_obj	return spatial correlation object (spatCorObject)

**Value**

spatCorObject or cluster results

**Examples**

```
clusterSpatialCorGenes(gobject)
```

---

combCCcom

*combCCcom*


---

**Description**

Combine spatial and expression based cell-cell communication data.tables

**Usage**

```
combCCcom(
  spatialCC,
  exprCC,
  min_lig_nr = 3,
  min_rec_nr = 3,
  min_padj_value = 1,
  min_log2fc = 0,
  min_av_diff = 0
)
```

**Arguments**

spatialCC	spatial cell-cell communication scores
exprCC	expression cell-cell communication scores
min_lig_nr	minimum number of ligand cells
min_rec_nr	minimum number of receptor cells
min_padj_value	minimum adjusted p-value
min_log2fc	minimum log2 fold-change
min_av_diff	minimum average expression difference

**Value**

combined data.table with spatial and expression communication data

**Examples**

```
combCCcom(gobject)
```

---

combineCellProximityGenes

*combineCellProximityGenes*


---

**Description**

Combine CPG scores in a pairwise manner.

**Usage**

```
combineCellProximityGenes(
  cpgObject,
  selected_ints = NULL,
  selected_genes = NULL,
  specific_genes_1 = NULL,
  specific_genes_2 = NULL,
  min_cells = 5,
  min_int_cells = 3,
  min_fdr = 0.05,
  min_spat_diff = 0,
  min_log2_fc = 0.5,
  do_parallel = TRUE,
  cores = NA,
  verbose = T
)
```

**Arguments**

cpgObject	cell proximity gene score object
selected_ints	subset of selected cell-cell interactions (optional)
selected_genes	subset of selected genes (optional)
specific_genes_1	specific geneset combo (need to position match specific_genes_2)
specific_genes_2	specific geneset combo (need to position match specific_genes_1)
min_cells	minimum number of target cell type
min_int_cells	minimum number of interacting cell type
min_fdr	minimum adjusted p-value
min_spat_diff	minimum absolute spatial expression difference
min_log2_fc	minimum absolute log2 fold-change
do_parallel	run calculations in parallel with mclapply
cores	number of cores to use if do_parallel = TRUE
verbose	verbose

**Value**

cpgObject that contains the filtered differential gene scores

**Examples**

```
combineCellProximityGenes(gobject)
```

---

```
combineCellProximityGenes_per_interaction
      combineCellProximityGenes_per_interaction
```

---

**Description**

Combine CPG scores per interaction

**Usage**

```
combineCellProximityGenes_per_interaction(
  cpgObject,
  sel_int,
  selected_genes = NULL,
  specific_genes_1 = NULL,
  specific_genes_2 = NULL,
  min_cells = 5,
  min_int_cells = 3,
  min_fdr = 0.05,
  min_spat_diff = 0,
  min_log2_fc = 0.5
)
```

**Examples**

```
combineCellProximityGenes_per_interaction()
```

---

combineCPG	<i>combineCPG</i>
------------	-------------------

---

**Description**

Combine CPG scores in a pairwise manner.

**Usage**

```
combineCPG(
  cpgObject,
  selected_ints = NULL,
  selected_genes = NULL,
  specific_genes_1 = NULL,
  specific_genes_2 = NULL,
  min_cells = 5,
  min_int_cells = 3,
  min_fdr = 0.05,
  min_spat_diff = 0,
  min_log2_fc = 0.5,
  do_parallel = TRUE,
  cores = NA,
  verbose = T
)
```

**Arguments**

cpgObject	cell proximity gene score object
selected_ints	subset of selected cell-cell interactions (optional)
selected_genes	subset of selected genes (optional)
specific_genes_1	specific geneset combo (need to position match specific_genes_2)
specific_genes_2	specific geneset combo (need to position match specific_genes_1)
min_cells	minimum number of target cell type
min_int_cells	minimum number of interacting cell type
min_fdr	minimum adjusted p-value
min_spat_diff	minimum absolute spatial expression difference
min_log2_fc	minimum absolute log2 fold-change
do_parallel	run calculations in parallel with mclapply
cores	number of cores to use if do_parallel = TRUE
verbose	verbose

**Value**

cpgObject that contains the filtered differential gene scores

**Examples**

```
combineCPG(gobject)
```

---

combineMetadata

*combineMetadata*

---

**Description**

This function combines the cell metadata with spatial locations and enrichment results from createSpatialEnrich

**Usage**

```
combineMetadata(gobject, spat_enr_names = NULL)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	Giotto object
spat_enr_names	names of spatial enrichment results to include

**Value**

Extended cell metadata in data.table format.

**Examples**

```
combineMetadata(gobject)
```

---

```
convertEnsemblToGeneSymbol  
  convertEnsemblToGeneSymbol
```

---

**Description**

This function convert ensembl gene IDs from a matrix to official gene symbols

**Usage**

```
convertEnsemblToGeneSymbol(matrix, species = c("mouse", "human"))
```

**Arguments**

matrix	an expression matrix with ensembl gene IDs as rownames
species	species to use for gene symbol conversion

**Details**

This function requires that the biomaRt library is installed

**Value**

expression matrix with gene symbols as rownames

**Examples**

```
convertEnsemblToGeneSymbol(matrix)
```

---

```
convert_mgImage_to_array_DT  
  convert_mgImage_to_array_DT
```

---

**Description**

converts a magick image object to a data.table

**Usage**

```
convert_mgImage_to_array_DT(mg_object)
```

**Arguments**

mg_object	magick image or Giotto image object
-----------	-------------------------------------

**Value**

data.table with image pixel information

---

createCrossSection	<i>createCrossSection</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

---

## Description

Create a virtual 2D cross section.

## Usage

```
createCrossSection(
  gobject,
  name = "cross_section",
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  thickness_unit = c("cell", "natural"),
  slice_thickness = 2,
  cell_distance_estimate_method = "mean",
  extend_ratio = 0.2,
  method = c("equation", "3 points", "point and norm vector",
    "point and two plane vectors"),
  equation = NULL,
  point1 = NULL,
  point2 = NULL,
  point3 = NULL,
  normVector = NULL,
  planeVector1 = NULL,
  planeVector2 = NULL,
  mesh_grid_n = 20,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name of cross section object. (default = cross_sectino)
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network object. (default = Delaunay_network)
<code>thickness_unit</code>	unit of the virtual section thickness. If "cell", average size of the observed cells is used as length unit. If "natural", the unit of cell location coordinates is used.(default = cell)
<code>slice_thickness</code>	thickness of slice
<code>cell_distance_estimate_method</code>	method to estimate average distance between neigobring cells. (default = mean)
<code>extend_ratio</code>	deciding the span of the cross section meshgrid, as a ratio of extension compared to the borders of the vitural tissue section. (default = 0.2)
<code>method</code>	method to define the cross section plane. If equation, the plane is defined by a four element numerical vector (equation) in the form of c(A,B,C,D), corresponding to a plane with equation $Ax+By+Cz=D$ . If 3 points, the plane is define by the coordinates of 3 points, as given by point1, point2, and point3. If point



	and norm vector, the plane is defined by the coordinates of one point (point1) in the plane and the coordinates of one norm vector (normVector) to the plane. If point and two plane vector, the plane is defined by the coordinates of one point (point1) in the plane and the coordinates of two vectors (planeVector1, planeVector2) in the plane. (default = equation)
equation	equation required by method "equation".equations needs to be a numerical vector of length 4, in the form of c(A,B,C,D), which defines plane $Ax+By+Cz=D$ .
point1	coordinates of the first point required by method "3 points", "point and norm vector", and "point and two plane vectors".
point2	coordinates of the second point required by method "3 points"
point3	coordinates of the third point required by method "3 points"
normVector	coordinates of the norm vector required by method "point and norm vector"
planeVector1	coordinates of the first plane vector required by method "point and two plane vectors"
planeVector2	coordinates of the second plane vector required by method "point and two plane vectors"
mesh_grid_n	numer of meshgrid lines to generate along both directions for the cross section plane.
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

### Details

Creates a virtual 2D cross section object for a given spatial network object. The users need to provide the definition of the cross section plane (see method).

### Value

giotto object with updated spatial network slot

---

createGiottoImage	<i>createGiottoImage</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

---

### Description

Creates a giotto image that can be added to a Giotto object and/or used to add an image to the spatial plotting functions

### Usage

```
createGiottoImage(
  gobject = NULL,
  spatial_locs = NULL,
  mg_object,
  name = "image",
  xmax_adj = 0,
  xmin_adj = 0,
  ymax_adj = 0,
  ymin_adj = 0
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>spatial_locs</code>	spatial locations (alternative if <code>giobject = NULL</code> )
<code>mg_object</code>	magick image object
<code>name</code>	name for the image
<code>xmax_adj</code>	adjustment of the maximum x-value to align the image
<code>xmin_adj</code>	adjustment of the minimum x-value to align the image
<code>ymax_adj</code>	adjustment of the maximum y-value to align the image
<code>ymin_adj</code>	adjustment of the minimum y-value to align the image

**Value**

a giotto image object

**Examples**

```
createGiottoImage(mg_object)
```

---

```
createGiottoInstructions
```

```
createGiottoInstructions
```

---

**Description**

Function to set global instructions for giotto functions

**Usage**

```
createGiottoInstructions(
  python_path = NULL,
  show_plot = NULL,
  return_plot = NULL,
  save_plot = NULL,
  save_dir = NULL,
  plot_format = NULL,
  dpi = NULL,
  units = NULL,
  height = NULL,
  width = NULL
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>python_path</code>	path to python binary to use
<code>show_plot</code>	print plot to console, default = TRUE
<code>return_plot</code>	return plot as object, default = TRUE
<code>save_plot</code>	automatically save plot, default = FALSE
<code>save_dir</code>	path to directory where to save plots

plot_format	format of plots (defaults to png)
dpi	resolution for raster images
units	units of format (defaults to in)
height	height of plots
width	width of plots

**Value**

named vector with giotto instructions

**See Also**

More online information can be found here [https://rubd.github.io/Giotto\\_site/articles/instructions\\_and\\_plotting.html](https://rubd.github.io/Giotto_site/articles/instructions_and_plotting.html)

**Examples**

```
createGiottoInstructions()
```

---

createGiottoObject	<i>create Giotto object</i>
--------------------	-----------------------------

---

**Description**

Function to create a giotto object

**Usage**

```
createGiottoObject(
  raw_exprs,
  spatial_locs = NULL,
  norm_expr = NULL,
  norm_scaled_expr = NULL,
  custom_expr = NULL,
  cell_metadata = NULL,
  gene_metadata = NULL,
  spatial_network = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = NULL,
  spatial_grid = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = NULL,
  spatial_enrichment = NULL,
  spatial_enrichment_name = NULL,
  dimension_reduction = NULL,
  nn_network = NULL,
  images = NULL,
  offset_file = NULL,
  instructions = NULL,
  cores = NA
)
```

**Arguments**

raw_exprs	matrix with raw expression counts [required]
spatial_locs	data.table or data.frame with coordinates for cell centroids
norm_expr	normalized expression values
norm_scaled_expr	scaled expression values
custom_expr	custom expression values
cell_metadata	cell annotation metadata
gene_metadata	gene annotation metadata
spatial_network	list of spatial network(s)
spatial_network_name	list of spatial network name(s)
spatial_grid	list of spatial grid(s)
spatial_grid_name	list of spatial grid name(s)
spatial_enrichment	list of spatial enrichment score(s) for each spatial region
spatial_enrichment_name	list of spatial enrichment name(s)
dimension_reduction	list of dimension reduction(s)
nn_network	list of nearest neighbor network(s)
images	list of images
offset_file	file used to stitch fields together (optional)
instructions	list of instructions or output result from <a href="#">createGiottoInstructions</a>
cores	how many cores or threads to use to read data if paths are provided

**Details**

**[Requirements]** To create a giotto object you need to provide at least a matrix with genes as row names and cells as column names. This matrix can be provided as a base matrix, sparse Matrix, data.frame, data.table or as a path to any of those. To include spatial information about cells (or regions) you need to provide a matrix, data.table or data.frame (or path to them) with coordinates for all spatial dimensions. This can be 2D (x and y) or 3D (x, y, x). The row order for the cell coordinates should be the same as the column order for the provided expression data.

**[Instructions]** Additionally an instruction file, generated manually or with [createGiottoInstructions](#) can be provided to instructions, if not a default instruction file will be created for the Giotto object.

**[Multiple fields]** In case a dataset consists of multiple fields, like seqFISH+ for example, an offset file can be provided to stitch the different fields together. [stitchFieldCoordinates](#) can be used to generate such an offset file.

**[Processed data]** Processed count data, such as normalized data, can be provided using one of the different expression slots (norm\_expr, norm\_scaled\_expr, custom\_expr).

**[Metadata]** Cell and gene metadata can be provided using the cell and gene metadata slots. This data can also be added afterwards using the [addGeneMetadata](#) or [addCellMetadata](#) functions.

**[Other information]** Additional information can be provided through the appropriate slots:

- spatial networks
- spatial girds
- spatial enrichments
- dimensions reductions
- nearest neighbours networks
- images

### Value

giotto object

### Examples

```
createGiottoObject(raw_exprs, spatial_locs)
```

---

```
createGiottoVisiumObject
      createGiottoVisiumObject
```

---

### Description

creates Giotto object directly from a 10X visium folder

### Usage

```
createGiottoVisiumObject(
  visium_dir = NULL,
  expr_data = c("raw", "filter"),
  gene_column_index = 1,
  png_name = NULL,
  xmax_adj = 0,
  xmin_adj = 0,
  ymax_adj = 0,
  ymin_adj = 0,
  instructions = NULL,
  cores = NA
)
```

### Arguments

visium_dir	path to the 10X visium directory [required]
expr_data	raw or filtered data (see details)
gene_column_index	which column index to select (see details)
png_name	select name of png to use (see details)
xmax_adj	adjustment of the maximum x-value to align the image
xmin_adj	adjustment of the minimum x-value to align the image
ymax_adj	adjustment of the maximum y-value to align the image
ymin_adj	adjustment of the minimum y-value to align the image
instructions	list of instructions or output result from <a href="#">createGiottoInstructions</a>
cores	how many cores or threads to use to read data if paths are provided

Details

- `expr_data`: raw will take expression data from `raw_feature_bc_matrix` and filter from `filtered_feature_bc_matrix`
- `gene_column_index`: which gene identifiers (names) to use if there are multiple columns (e.g. ensemble and gene symbol)
- `png_name`: by default the first png will be selected, provide the png name to override this (e.g. `myimage.png`)

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
createGiottoVisiumObject(visium_dir)
```

---

<code>createHeatmap_DT</code>	<i>createHeatmap_DT</i>
-------------------------------	-------------------------

---

Description

creates order for clusters

Usage

```
createHeatmap_DT(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  genes,  
  cluster_column = NULL,  
  cluster_order = c("size", "correlation", "custom"),  
  cluster_custom_order = NULL,  
  cluster_cor_method = "pearson",  
  cluster_hclust_method = "ward.D",  
  gene_order = c("correlation", "custom"),  
  gene_custom_order = NULL,  
  gene_cor_method = "pearson",  
  gene_hclust_method = "complete"  
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	name of column to use for clusters
<code>cluster_order</code>	method to determine cluster order
<code>cluster_custom_order</code>	custom order for clusters

```

cluster_cor_method      method for cluster correlation
cluster_hclust_method   method for hierarchical clustering of clusters

gene_order             method to determine gene order
gene_custom_order      custom order for genes

gene_cor_method         method for gene correlation
gene_hclust_method     method for hierarchical clustering of genes

```

### Details

Creates input data.tables for plotHeatmap function.

### Value

list

### Examples

```
createHeatmap_DT(gobject)
```

---

createMetagenes	<i>createMetagenes</i>
-----------------	------------------------

---

### Description

This function creates an average metagene for gene clusters.

### Usage

```

createMetagenes(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  gene_clusters,
  name = "metagene",
  return_gobject = TRUE
)

```

### Arguments

```

gobject      Giotto object
expression_values  expression values to use

gene_clusters numerical vector with genes as names
name          name of the metagene results
return_gobject return giotto object

```

**Details**

An example for the 'gene\_clusters' could be like this: `cluster_vector = c(1, 1, 2, 2); names(cluster_vector) = c('geneA', 'geneB', 'geneC', 'geneD')`

**Value**

giotto object

**Examples**

```
createMetagenes(gobject)
```

---

```
createNearestNetwork    createNearestNetwork
```

---

**Description**

create a nearest neighbour (NN) network

**Usage**

```
createNearestNetwork(
  gobject,
  type = c("sNN", "kNN"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "pca",
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  name = "sNN.pca",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  k = 30,
  minimum_shared = 5,
  top_shared = 3,
  verbose = T,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>type</code>	sNN or kNN
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction method to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	name of dimension reduction set to use
<code>dimensions_to_use</code>	number of dimensions to use as input
<code>genes_to_use</code>	if <code>dim_reduction_to_use = NULL</code> , which genes to use
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use



name	arbitrary name for NN network
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
k	number of k neighbors to use
minimum_shared	minimum shared neighbors
top_shared	keep at ...
verbose	be verbose
...	additional parameters for kNN and sNN functions from dbscan

## Details

This function creates a k-nearest neighbour (kNN) or shared nearest neighbour (sNN) network based on the provided dimension reduction space. To run it directly on the gene expression matrix set *dim\_reduction\_to\_use = NULL*.

See also [kNN](#) and [sNN](#) for more information about how the networks are created.

Output for kNN:

- from: cell\_ID for source cell
- to: cell\_ID for target cell
- distance: distance between cells
- weight:  $\text{weight} = 1/(1 + \text{distance})$

Output for sNN:

- from: cell\_ID for source cell
- to: cell\_ID for target cell
- distance: distance between cells
- weight:  $1/(1 + \text{distance})$
- shared: number of shared neighbours
- rank: ranking of pairwise cell neighbours

For sNN networks two additional parameters can be set:

- minimum\_shared: minimum number of shared neighbours needed
- top\_shared: keep this number of the top shared neighbours, irrespective of minimum\_shared setting

## Value

giotto object with updated NN network

## Examples

```
createNearestNetwork(gobject)
```

---

```
createSpatialDelaunayNetwork
      createSpatialDelaunayNetwork
```

---

## Description

Create a spatial Delaunay network based on cell centroid physical distances.

## Usage

```
createSpatialDelaunayNetwork(
  gobject,
  method = c("deldir", "delaunayn_geometry", "RTriangle"),
  dimensions = "all",
  name = "Delaunay_network",
  maximum_distance = "auto",
  minimum_k = 0,
  options = "Pp",
  Y = TRUE,
  j = TRUE,
  S = 0,
  verbose = T,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dimensions</code>	which spatial dimensions to use (default = all)
<code>name</code>	name for spatial network (default = 'delaunay_network')
<code>maximum_distance</code>	distance cutoff for Delaunay neighbors to consider. If "auto", "upper whisker" value of the distance vector between neighbors is used; see the <code>boxplotgraphics</code> documentation for more details. (default = "auto")
<code>minimum_k</code>	minimum number of neighbours if <code>maximum_distance</code> != NULL
<code>options</code>	(geometry) String containing extra control options for the underlying Qhull command; see the Qhull documentation ( <a href="http://doc/qhull/html/qdelaun.html">../doc/qhull/html/qdelaun.html</a> ) for the available options. (default = 'Pp', do not report precision problems)
<code>Y</code>	(RTriangle) If TRUE prohibits the insertion of Steiner points on the mesh boundary.
<code>j</code>	(RTriangle) If TRUE jettisons vertices that are not part of the final triangulation from the output.
<code>S</code>	(RTriangle) Specifies the maximum number of added Steiner points.
<code>verbose</code>	verbose
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>...</code>	Other parameters of the <a href="#">triangulate</a> function

**Details**

Creates a spatial Delaunay network as explained in [delaunayn](#) (default), [deldir](#), or [triangulate](#).

**Value**

giotto object with updated spatial network slot

**Examples**

```
createSpatialDelaunayNetwork(gobject)
```

---

```
createSpatialEnrich      createSpatialEnrich
```

---

**Description**

Function to calculate gene signature enrichment scores per spatial position using a hypergeometric test.

**Usage**

```
createSpatialEnrich(
  gobject,
  enrich_method = c("PAGE", "rank", "hypergeometric"),
  sign_matrix,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reverse_log_scale = TRUE,
  logbase = 2,
  p_value = FALSE,
  n_genes = 100,
  n_times = 1000,
  top_percentage = 5,
  output_enrichment = c("original", "zscore"),
  name = "PAGE",
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	Giotto object
<code>enrich_method</code>	method for gene signature enrichment calculation
<code>sign_matrix</code>	Matrix of signature genes for each cell type / process
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>reverse_log_scale</code>	reverse expression values from log scale
<code>logbase</code>	log base to use if <code>reverse_log_scale = TRUE</code>
<code>p_value</code>	calculate p-value (default = FALSE)
<code>n_genes</code>	(page) number of genes of permutation iterations to calculate p-value

n\_times (page/rank) number of permutation iterations to calculate p-value  
 top\_percentage (hyper) percentage of cells that will be considered to have gene expression with matrix binarization  
 output\_enrichment how to return enrichment output  
 name to give to spatial enrichment results, default = PAGE  
 return\_gobject return giotto object

### Details

For details see the individual functions:

- PAGE: [PAGEEnrich](#)
- PAGE: [rankEnrich](#)
- PAGE: [hyperGeometricEnrich](#)

### Value

Giotto object or enrichment results if return\_gobject = FALSE

### Examples

```
createSpatialEnrich(gobject)
```

---

createSpatialGrid	<i>createSpatialGrid</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

---

### Description

Create a spatial grid.

### Usage

```
createSpatialGrid(
  gobject,
  sdimx_stepsize = NULL,
  sdimy_stepsize = NULL,
  sdimz_stepsize = NULL,
  minimum_padding = 1,
  name = "spatial_grid",
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

### Arguments

gobject giotto object  
 sdimx\_stepsize stepsize along the x-axis  
 sdimy\_stepsize stepsize along the y-axis  
 sdimz\_stepsize stepsize along the z-axis

minimum_padding	minimum padding on the edges
name	name for spatial grid (default = 'spatial_grid')
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

**Details**

Creates a spatial grid with defined x, y (and z) dimensions. The dimension units are based on the provided spatial location units.

**Value**

giotto object with updated spatial grid slot

**Examples**

```
createSpatialGrid(gobject)
```

---

```
createSpatialGrid_2D    createSpatialGrid_2D
```

---

**Description**

create a spatial grid for 2D spatial data.

**Usage**

```
createSpatialGrid_2D(
  gobject,
  sdimx_stepsize = NULL,
  sdimy_stepsize = NULL,
  minimum_padding = 1,
  name = "spatial_grid",
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
sdimx_stepsize	stepsize along the x-axis
sdimy_stepsize	stepsize along the y-axis
minimum_padding	minimum padding on the edges
name	name for spatial grid (default = 'spatial_grid')
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

**Details**

Creates a spatial grid with defined x, y (and z) dimensions. The dimension units are based on the provided spatial location units.

**Value**

giotto object with updated spatial grid slot

**Examples**

```
createSpatialGrid_2D(gobject)
```

---

```
createSpatialGrid_3D    createSpatialGrid_3D
```

---

**Description**

Create a spatial grid for 3D spatial data.

**Usage**

```
createSpatialGrid_3D(
  gobject,
  sdimx_stepsize = NULL,
  sdimy_stepsize = NULL,
  sdimz_stepsize = NULL,
  minimum_padding = 1,
  name = "spatial_grid",
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>sdimx_stepsize</code>	stepsize along the x-axis
<code>sdimy_stepsize</code>	stepsize along the y-axis
<code>sdimz_stepsize</code>	stepsize along the z-axis
<code>minimum_padding</code>	minimum padding on the edges
<code>name</code>	name for spatial grid (default = 'spatial_grid')
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

**Details**

Creates a spatial grid with defined x, y (and z) dimensions. The dimension units are based on the provided spatial location units.

**Value**

giotto object with updated spatial grid slot

**Examples**

```
createSpatialGrid_3D(gobject)
```

---

```
createSpatialKNNnetwork
      createSpatialKNNnetwork
```

---

## Description

Create a spatial knn network.

## Usage

```
createSpatialKNNnetwork(
  gobject,
  method = "dbscan",
  dimensions = "all",
  name = "knn_network",
  k = 4,
  maximum_distance = NULL,
  minimum_k = 0,
  verbose = F,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>method</code>	method to create kNN network
<code>dimensions</code>	which spatial dimensions to use (default = all)
<code>name</code>	name for spatial network (default = 'spatial_network')
<code>k</code>	number of nearest neighbors based on physical distance
<code>maximum_distance</code>	distance cutoff for nearest neighbors to consider for kNN network
<code>minimum_k</code>	minimum nearest neighbours if <code>maximum_distance</code> != NULL
<code>verbose</code>	verbose
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

## Value

giotto object with updated spatial network slot

**dimensions:** default = 'all' which takes all possible dimensions. Alternatively you can provide a character vector that specifies the spatial dimensions to use, e.g. `c("sdmx", "sdmy")` or a numerical vector, e.g. `2:3`

**maximum\_distance:** to create a network based on maximum distance only, you also need to set `k` to a very high value, e.g. `k = 100`

## Examples

```
createSpatialKNNnetwork(gobject)
```

---

```
createSpatialNetwork  createSpatialNetwork
```

---

## Description

Create a spatial network based on cell centroid physical distances.

## Usage

```
createSpatialNetwork(
  gobject,
  name = NULL,
  dimensions = "all",
  method = c("Delaunay", "kNN"),
  delaunay_method = c("deldir", "delaunayn_geometry", "RTriangle"),
  maximum_distance_delaunay = "auto",
  options = "Pp",
  Y = TRUE,
  j = TRUE,
  S = 0,
  minimum_k = 0,
  knn_method = "dbscan",
  k = 4,
  maximum_distance_knn = NULL,
  verbose = F,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name for spatial network (default = 'spatial_network')
<code>dimensions</code>	which spatial dimensions to use (default = all)
<code>method</code>	which method to use to create a spatial network. (default = Delaunay)
<code>delaunay_method</code>	Delaunay method to use
<code>maximum_distance_delaunay</code>	distance cutoff for nearest neighbors to consider for Delaunay network
<code>options</code>	(geometry) String containing extra control options for the underlying Qhull command; see the Qhull documentation ( <a href="#">../doc/qhull/html/qdelaun.html</a> ) for the available options. (default = 'Pp', do not report precision problems)
<code>Y</code>	(RTriangle) If TRUE prohibits the insertion of Steiner points on the mesh boundary.
<code>j</code>	(RTriangle) If TRUE jettisons vertices that are not part of the final triangulation from the output.
<code>S</code>	(RTriangle) Specifies the maximum number of added Steiner points.
<code>minimum_k</code>	minimum nearest neighbours if maximum_distance != NULL



knn_method	method to create kNN network
k	number of nearest neighbors based on physical distance
maximum_distance_knn	distance cutoff for nearest neighbors to consider for kNN network
verbose	verbose
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

### Details

Creates a spatial network connecting single-cells based on their physical distance to each other. For Delaunay method, neighbors will be decided by delaunay triangulation and a maximum distance criteria. For kNN method, number of neighbors can be determined by k, or maximum distance from each cell with or without setting a minimum k for each cell.

**dimensions:** default = 'all' which takes all possible dimensions. Alternatively you can provide a character vector that specifies the spatial dimensions to use, e.g. c("sdimx", "sdimy") or a numerical vector, e.g. 2:3

### Value

giotto object with updated spatial network slot

### Examples

```
createSpatialNetwork(gobject)
```

---

```
create_average_detection_DT
      create_average_detection_DT
```

---

### Description

calculates average gene detection for a cell metadata factor (e.g. cluster)

### Usage

```
create_average_detection_DT(
  gobject,
  meta_data_name,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  detection_threshold = 0
)
```

### Arguments

gobject	giotto object
meta_data_name	name of metadata column to use
expression_values	which expression values to use
detection_threshold	detection threshold to consider a gene detected

**Value**

data.table with average gene expression values for each factor

---

create_average_DT	<i>create_average_DT</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

---

**Description**

calculates average gene expression for a cell metadata factor (e.g. cluster)

**Usage**

```
create_average_DT(
  gobject,
  meta_data_name,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom")
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
meta_data_name	name of metadata column to use
expression_values	which expression values to use

**Value**

data.table with average gene expression values for each factor

---

create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs	<i>create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs</i>
----------------------------------	---

---

**Description**

creates randomized cell ids within a selection of cell types

**Usage**

```
create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs(
  gobject,
  cluster_column = "cell_types",
  needed_cell_types
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject               giotto object to use  
 cluster\_column   cluster column with cell type information  
 needed\_cell\_types       vector of cell type names for which a random id will be found

**Details**

Details will follow.

**Value**

list of randomly sampled cell ids with same cell type composition

**Examples**

```
create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs(gobject)
```

---

```
create_crossSection_object
      create_crossSection_object
```

---

**Description**

create a crossSection object

**Usage**

```
create_crossSection_object(
  name = NULL,
  method = NULL,
  thickness_unit = NULL,
  slice_thickness = NULL,
  plane_equation = NULL,
  mesh_grid_n = NULL,
  mesh_obj = NULL,
  cell_subset = NULL,
  cell_subset_spatial_locations = NULL,
  cell_subset_projection_locations = NULL,
  cell_subset_projection_PCA = NULL,
  cell_subset_projection_coords = NULL
)
```

**Arguments**

name               name of cress section object. (default = cross\_sectino)  
 method             method to define the cross section plane.  
 thickness\_unit   unit of the virtual section thickness. If "cell", average size of the observed cells is used as length unit. If "natural", the unit of cell location coordinates is used.(default = cell)

slice_thickness	thickness of slice
plane_equation	a numerical vector of length 4, in the form of $c(A,B,C,D)$ , which defines plane $Ax+By+Cz=D$ .
mesh_grid_n	numer of meshgrid lines to generate along both directions for the cross section plane.
mesh_obj	object that stores the cross section meshgrid information.
cell_subset	cells selected by the cross section
cell_subset_spatial_locations	locations of cells selected by the cross section
cell_subset_projection_locations	3D projection coordinates of selected cells onto the cross section plane
cell_subset_projection_PCA	pca of projection coordinates
cell_subset_projection_coords	2D PCA coordinates of selected cells in the cross section plane
cell_distance_estimate_method	method to estimate average distance between neighobring cells. (default = mean)
extend_ratio	deciding the span of the cross section meshgrid, as a ratio of extension compared to the borders of the vitural tissue section. (default = 0.2)

---

```
create_delaunayNetwork2D
```

```
create_delaunayNetwork2D
```

---

## Description

Create a spatial Delaunay network.

## Usage

```
create_delaunayNetwork2D(
  gobject,
  method = c("delaunayn_geometry", "RTriangle", "deldir"),
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  name = "delaunay_network",
  maximum_distance = "auto",
  minimum_k = 0,
  options = "Pp",
  Y = TRUE,
  j = TRUE,
  S = 0,
  verbose = T,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

## Examples

```
create_delaunayNetwork2D(gobject)
```

---

```
create_delaunayNetwork3D  
    create_delaunayNetwork3D
```

---

**Description**

Create a spatial Delaunay network.

**Usage**

```
create_delaunayNetwork3D(  
  gobject,  
  method = "delaunayn_geometry",  
  sdimx = "sdimx",  
  sdimy = "sdimy",  
  sdimz = "sdimz",  
  name = "delaunay_network_3D",  
  maximum_distance = "auto",  
  minimum_k = 0,  
  options = "Pp",  
  return_gobject = TRUE,  
  ...  
)
```

**Examples**

```
create_delaunayNetwork3D(gobject)
```

---

```
create_delaunayNetwork_deldir  
    create_delaunayNetwork_deldir
```

---

**Description**

Create a spatial Delaunay network.

**Usage**

```
create_delaunayNetwork_deldir(  
  spatial_locations,  
  sdimx = "sdimx",  
  sdimy = "sdimy",  
  ...  
)
```

**Examples**

```
create_delaunayNetwork_deldir(gobject)
```

---

```
create_delaunayNetwork_geometry  
    create_delaunayNetwork_geometry
```

---

### Description

Create a spatial Delaunay network.

### Usage

```
create_delaunayNetwork_geometry(  
  spatial_locations,  
  sdimx = "sdimx",  
  sdimy = "sdimy",  
  options = "Pp",  
  ...  
)
```

### Examples

```
create_delaunayNetwork_geometry(gobject)
```

---

```
create_delaunayNetwork_geometry_3D  
    create_delaunayNetwork_geometry_3D
```

---

### Description

Create a spatial Delaunay network.

### Usage

```
create_delaunayNetwork_geometry_3D(  
  spatial_locations,  
  sdimx = "sdimx",  
  sdimy = "sdimy",  
  sdimz = "sdimz",  
  options = options,  
  ...  
)
```

### Examples

```
create_delaunayNetwork_geometry_3D(gobject)
```

---

```
create_delaunayNetwork_RTriangle
      create_delaunayNetwork_RTriangle
```

---

### Description

Create a spatial Delaunay network.

### Usage

```
create_delaunayNetwork_RTriangle(
  spatial_locations,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  Y = TRUE,
  j = TRUE,
  S = 0,
  ...
)
```

### Examples

```
create_delaunayNetwork_RTriangle(gobject)
```

---

```
create_genes_to_use_matrix
      create_genes_to_use_matrix
```

---

### Description

subsets matrix based on vector of genes or hvg column

### Usage

```
create_genes_to_use_matrix(gobject, sel_matrix, genes_to_use, verbose = TRUE)
```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>sel_matrix</code>	selected expression matrix
<code>genes_to_use</code>	genes to use, character or vector of genes
<code>verbose</code>	verbosity

### Value

subsetting matrix based on selected genes

---

```
create_KNNnetwork_dbSCAN  
      create_KNNnetwork_dbSCAN
```

---

### Description

Create a spatial knn network.

### Usage

```
create_KNNnetwork_dbSCAN(  
  spatial_locations,  
  sdimx = "sdimx",  
  sdimy = "sdimy",  
  sdimz = "sdimz",  
  k = 4,  
  ...  
)
```

### Examples

```
create_KNNnetwork_dbSCAN(gobject)
```

---

```
create_screepLOT      create_screepLOT
```

---

### Description

create screepLOT with ggplot

### Usage

```
create_screepLOT(pca_obj, ncp = 20, ylim = c(0, 20))
```

### Arguments

pca_obj	pca dimension reduction object
ncp	number of principal components to calculate
ylim	y-axis limits on scree plot

### Value

ggplot



---

crossSectionGenePlot    *crossSectionGenePlot*

---

## Description

Visualize cells and gene expression in a virtual cross section according to spatial coordinates

## Usage

```
crossSectionGenePlot(
  gobject = NULL,
  crossSection_obj = NULL,
  name = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  default_save_name = "crossSectionGenePlot",
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>crossSection_obj</code>	crossSection object
<code>name</code>	name of virtual cross section to use
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>...</code>	parameters for <code>spatGenePlot2D</code>

## Details

Description of parameters.

## Value

ggplot

## See Also

[spatGenePlot3D](#) and [spatGenePlot2D](#)

---

crossSectionGenePlot3D

*crossSectionGenePlot3D*


---

## Description

Visualize cells and gene expression in a virtual cross section according to spatial coordinates

## Usage

```
crossSectionGenePlot3D(
  gobject,
  crossSection_obj = NULL,
  name = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  other_cell_color = alpha("lightgrey", 0),
  default_save_name = "crossSectionGenePlot3D",
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name of virtual cross section to use
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>...</code>	parameters for <code>spatGenePlot3D</code>

## Details

Description of parameters.

## Value

ggplot

## Examples

```
crossSectionGenePlot3D(gobject)
```

---

crossSectionPlot	<i>crossSectionPlot</i>
------------------	-------------------------

---

## Description

Visualize cells in a virtual cross section according to spatial coordinates

## Usage

```
crossSectionPlot(  
  gobject,  
  crossSection_obj = NULL,  
  name = NULL,  
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",  
  default_save_name = "crossSectionPlot",  
  ...  
)
```

## Arguments

gobject	giotto object
name	name of virtual cross section to use
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
...	parameters for spatPlot2D

## Details

Description of parameters.

## Value

ggplot

## See Also

[crossSectionPlot](#)

---

crossSectionPlot3D	<i>crossSectionPlot3D</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

---

## Description

Visualize cells in a virtual cross section according to spatial coordinates

## Usage

```
crossSectionPlot3D(
  gobject,
  crossSection_obj = NULL,
  name = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = alpha("lightgrey", 0),
  default_save_name = "crossSection3D",
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name of virtual cross section to use
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>...</code>	parameters for <code>spatPlot3D</code>

## Details

Description of parameters.

## Value

ggplot

## Examples

```
crossSectionPlot3D(gobject)
```

---

decide_cluster_order	<i>decide_cluster_order</i>
----------------------	-----------------------------

---

## Description

creates order for clusters

## Usage

```
decide_cluster_order(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  genes,  
  cluster_column = NULL,  
  cluster_order = c("size", "correlation", "custom"),  
  cluster_custom_order = NULL,  
  cor_method = "pearson",  
  hclust_method = "ward.D"  
)
```

## Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
genes	genes to use
cluster_column	name of column to use for clusters
cluster_order	method to determine cluster order
cluster_custom_order	custom order for clusters
cor_method	method for correlation
hclust_method	method for hierarchical clustering

## Details

Calculates order for clusters.

## Value

custom

## Examples

```
decide_cluster_order(gobject)
```

---

detectSpatialCorGenes    *detectSpatialCorGenes*

---

## Description

Detect genes that are spatially correlated

## Usage

```
detectSpatialCorGenes(
  gobject,
  method = c("grid", "network"),
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  subset_genes = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  network_smoothing = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  min_cells_per_grid = 4,
  cor_method = c("pearson", "kendall", "spearman")
)
```

## Arguments

gobject	giotto object
method	method to use for spatial averaging
expression_values	gene expression values to use
subset_genes	subset of genes to use
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
network_smoothing	smoothing factor between 0 and 1 (default: automatic)
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
min_cells_per_grid	minimum number of cells to consider a grid
cor_method	correlation method

## Details

For method = network, it expects a fully connected spatial network. You can make sure to create a fully connected network by setting `minimal_k > 0` in the [createSpatialNetwork](#) function.

- 1. grid-averaging: average gene expression values within a predefined spatial grid
- 2. network-averaging: smoothens the gene expression matrix by averaging the expression within one cell by using the neighbours within the predefined spatial network. `b` is a smoothening factor that defaults to  $1 - 1/k$ , where `k` is the median number of `k`-neighbors in the selected spatial network. Setting `b = 0` means no smoothing and `b = 1` means no contribution from its own expression.

The `spatCorObject` can be further explored with `showSpatialCorGenes()`

**Value**

returns a spatial correlation object: "spatCorObject"

**See Also**

[showSpatialCorGenes](#)

**Examples**

```
detectSpatialCorGenes(gobject)
```

---

detectSpatialPatterns    *detectSpatialPatterns*

---

**Description**

Identify spatial patterns through PCA on average expression in a spatial grid.

**Usage**

```
detectSpatialPatterns(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  min_cells_per_grid = 4,
  scale_unit = F,
  ncp = 100,
  show_plot = T,
  PC_zscore = 1.5
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use (default = 'spatial_grid')
<code>min_cells_per_grid</code>	minimum number of cells in a grid to be considered
<code>scale_unit</code>	scale features
<code>ncp</code>	number of principal components to calculate
<code>show_plot</code>	show plots
<code>PC_zscore</code>	minimum z-score of variance explained by a PC

Details

Steps to identify spatial patterns:

- 1. average gene expression for cells within a grid, see createSpatialGrid
- 2. perform PCA on the average grid expression profiles
- 3. convert variance of principal components (PCs) to z-scores and select PCs based on a z-score threshold

Value

spatial pattern object 'spatPatObj'

Examples

```
detectSpatialPatterns(gobject)
```

---

dimCellPlot	<i>dimCellPlot</i>
-------------	--------------------

---

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimCellPlot(...)
```

Arguments

- ... Arguments passed on to [dimCellPlot2D](#)
- gobject giotto object
- dim\_reduction\_to\_use dimension reduction to use
- dim\_reduction\_name dimension reduction name
- dim1\_to\_use dimension to use on x-axis
- dim2\_to\_use dimension to use on y-axis
- spat\_enr\_names names of spatial enrichment results to include
- cell\_annotation\_values numeric cell annotation columns
- show\_NN\_network show underlying NN network
- nn\_network\_to\_use type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
- network\_name name of NN network to use, if show\_NN\_network = TRUE
- cell\_color\_gradient vector with 3 colors for numeric data
- gradient\_midpoint midpoint for color gradient
- gradient\_limits vector with lower and upper limits
- select\_cell\_groups select subset of cells/clusters based on cell\_color parameter
- select\_cells select subset of cells based on cell IDs
- show\_other\_cells display not selected cells
- other\_cell\_color color of not selected cells



other\_point\_size size of not selected cells  
 show\_cluster\_center plot center of selected clusters  
 show\_center\_label plot label of selected clusters  
 center\_point\_size size of center points  
 label\_size size of labels  
 label\_fontface font of labels  
 edge\_alpha column to use for alpha of the edges  
 point\_shape point with border or not (border or no\_border)  
 point\_size size of point (cell)  
 point\_alpha transparency of dim. reduction points  
 point\_border\_col color of border around points  
 point\_border\_stroke stroke size of border around points  
 show\_legend show legend  
 legend\_text size of legend text  
 legend\_symbol\_size size of legend symbols  
 background\_color color of plot background  
 axis\_text size of axis text  
 axis\_title size of axis title  
 show\_plot show plot  
 return\_plot return ggplot object  
 save\_plot directly save the plot [boolean]  
 save\_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)  
 default\_save\_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save\_name  
 in save\_param

## Details

Description of parameters. For 3D plots see [dimCellPlot2D](#)

## Value

ggplot

## See Also

Other dimension reduction cell annotation visualizations: [dimCellPlot2D\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
dimCellPlot(gobject)
```

---

dimCellPlot2D

*dimCellPlot2D*


---

## Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

## Usage

```
dimCellPlot2D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  cell_annotation_values = NULL,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  center_point_border_col = "black",
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  label_size = 4,
  label_fontface = "bold",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  point_shape = c("border", "no_border"),
  point_size = 1,
  point_alpha = 1,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_legend = T,
  legend_text = 8,
  legend_symbol_size = 1,
  background_color = "white",
  axis_text = 8,
  axis_title = 8,
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
  cow_align = "h",
```

```

    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "dimCellPlot2D"
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>cell_annotation_values</code>	numeric cell annotation columns
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>other_point_size</code>	size of not selected cells
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters
<code>show_center_label</code>	plot label of selected clusters
<code>center_point_size</code>	size of center points
<code>label_size</code>	size of labels
<code>label_fontface</code>	font of labels
<code>edge_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges

point_shape	point with border or not (border or no_border)
point_size	size of point (cell)
point_alpha	transparency of dim. reduction points
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_legend	show legend
legend_text	size of legend text
legend_symbol_size	size of legend symbols
background_color	color of plot background
axis_text	size of axis text
axis_title	size of axis title
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
title	title for plot, defaults to cell_color parameter

## Details

Description of parameters. For 3D plots see [dimPlot3D](#)

## Value

ggplot

## See Also

Other dimension reduction cell annotation visualizations: [dimCellPlot\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
dimCellPlot2D(gobject)
```

dimGenePlot

*dimGenePlot***Description**

Visualize gene expression according to dimension reduction coordinates

**Usage**

```
dimGenePlot(...)
```

**Arguments**

```
...           Arguments passed on to dimGenePlot2D
gobject      giotto object
expression_values  gene expression values to use
genes        genes to show
dim_reduction_to_use  dimension reduction to use
dim_reduction_name  dimension reduction name
dim1_to_use  dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use  dimension to use on y-axis
show_NN_network  show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use  type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name  name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
edge_alpha    column to use for alpha of the edges
scale_alpha_with_expression  scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
point_shape   point with border or not (border or no_border)
point_size    size of point (cell)
point_alpha   transparency of points
cell_color_gradient  vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint  midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits  vector with lower and upper limits
point_border_col  color of border around points
point_border_stroke  stroke size of border around points
show_legend    show legend
legend_text    size of legend text
background_color  color of plot background
axis_text      size of axis text
axis_title     size of axis title
cow_n_col      cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h      cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w      cowplot param: relative width
cow_align      cowplot param: how to align
show_plot      show plots
return_plot    return ggplot object
save_plot      directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param     list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
default_save_name  default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name
                  in save_param
```

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[dimGenePlot3D](#)

Other dimension reduction gene expression visualizations: [dimGenePlot2D\(\)](#), [dimGenePlot3D\(\)](#)

Examples

```
dimGenePlot(gobject)
```

---

dimGenePlot2D	<i>dimGenePlot2D</i>
---------------	----------------------

---

Description

Visualize gene expression according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimGenePlot2D(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  genes = NULL,  
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",  
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",  
  dim1_to_use = 1,  
  dim2_to_use = 2,  
  show_NN_network = F,  
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",  
  network_name = "sNN.pca",  
  network_color = "lightgray",  
  edge_alpha = NULL,  
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,  
  point_shape = c("border", "no_border"),  
  point_size = 1,  
  point_alpha = 1,  
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),  
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,  
  gradient_limits = NULL,  
  point_border_col = "black",  
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,  
  show_legend = T,  
  legend_text = 8,  
  background_color = "white",  
  axis_text = 8,  
)
```

```

axis_title = 8,
cow_n_col = 2,
cow_rel_h = 1,
cow_rel_w = 1,
cow_align = "h",
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "dimGenePlot2D"
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>edge_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>scale_alpha_with_expression</code>	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
<code>point_shape</code>	point with border or not (border or no_border)
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_alpha</code>	transparency of points
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>legend_text</code>	size of legend text

background_color	color of plot background
axis_text	size of axis text
axis_title	size of axis title
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
...	additional parameters for cowplot::save_plot()

### Details

Description of parameters.

### Value

ggplot

### See Also

[dimGenePlot3D](#)

Other dimension reduction gene expression visualizations: [dimGenePlot3D\(\)](#), [dimGenePlot\(\)](#)

### Examples

```
dimGenePlot2D(gobject)
```

---

dimGenePlot3D

---

dimGenePlot3D

---

### Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to dimension reduction coordinates



**Usage**

```
dimGenePlot3D(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = 3,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  cluster_column = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 1,
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  point_size = 2,
  genes_high_color = NULL,
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  show_legend = T,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "dimGenePlot3D"
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)

network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_size	size of point (cell)
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
...	additional parameters for cowplot::save_plot()

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

Other dimension reduction gene expression visualizations: [dimGenePlot2D\(\)](#), [dimGenePlot\(\)](#)

Examples

dimGenePlot3D(gobject)

---

dimPlot	<i>dimPlot</i>
---------	----------------

---

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

dimPlot(...)

Arguments

...	Arguments passed on to <a href="#">dimPlot2D</a>
gobject	giotto object
group_by_subset	subset the group_by factor column
dim_reduction_to_use	dimension reduction to use
dim_reduction_name	dimension reduction name
dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis

spat\_enr\_names names of spatial enrichment results to include  
 show\_NN\_network show underlying NN network  
 nn\_network\_to\_use type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)  
 network\_name name of NN network to use, if show\_NN\_network = TRUE  
 cell\_color color for cells (see details)  
 color\_as\_factor convert color column to factor  
 cell\_color\_code named vector with colors  
 cell\_color\_gradient vector with 3 colors for numeric data  
 gradient\_midpoint midpoint for color gradient  
 gradient\_limits vector with lower and upper limits  
 select\_cell\_groups select subset of cells/clusters based on cell\_color parameter  
 select\_cells select subset of cells based on cell IDs  
 show\_other\_cells display not selected cells  
 other\_cell\_color color of not selected cells  
 other\_point\_size size of not selected cells  
 show\_cluster\_center plot center of selected clusters  
 show\_center\_label plot label of selected clusters  
 center\_point\_size size of center points  
 label\_size size of labels  
 label\_fontface font of labels  
 edge\_alpha column to use for alpha of the edges  
 point\_shape point with border or not (border or no\_border)  
 point\_size size of point (cell)  
 point\_alpha transparency of point  
 point\_border\_col color of border around points  
 point\_border\_stroke stroke size of border around points  
 title title for plot, defaults to cell\_color parameter  
 show\_legend show legend  
 legend\_text size of legend text  
 legend\_symbol\_size size of legend symbols  
 background\_color color of plot background  
 axis\_text size of axis text  
 axis\_title size of axis title  
 cow\_n\_col cowplot param: how many columns  
 cow\_rel\_h cowplot param: relative height  
 cow\_rel\_w cowplot param: relative width  
 cow\_align cowplot param: how to align  
 show\_plot show plot  
 return\_plot return ggplot object  
 save\_plot directly save the plot [boolean]  
 save\_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)  
 default\_save\_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save\_name in save\_param

## Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [dimPlot3D](#)

**Value**

ggplot

**See Also**

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
dimPlot(gobject)
```

---

dimPlot2D

*dimPlot2D*


---

**Description**

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

**Usage**

```
dimPlot2D(
  gobject,
  group_by = NULL,
  group_by_subset = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  center_point_border_col = "black",
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  label_size = 4,
  label_fontface = "bold",
```

```

    edge_alpha = NULL,
    point_shape = c("border", "no_border"),
    point_size = 1,
    point_alpha = 1,
    point_border_col = "black",
    point_border_stroke = 0.1,
    title = NULL,
    show_legend = T,
    legend_text = 8,
    legend_symbol_size = 1,
    background_color = "white",
    axis_text = 8,
    axis_title = 8,
    cow_n_col = 2,
    cow_rel_h = 1,
    cow_rel_w = 1,
    cow_align = "h",
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "dimPlot2D"
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>group_by_subset</code>	subset the <code>group_by</code> factor column
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient

gradient_limits	vector with lower and upper limits
select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	size of not selected cells
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points
label_size	size of labels
label_fontface	font of labels
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_shape	point with border or not (border or no_border)
point_size	size of point (cell)
point_alpha	transparency of point
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
title	title for plot, defaults to cell_color parameter
show_legend	show legend
legend_text	size of legend text
legend_symbol_size	size of legend symbols
background_color	color of plot background
axis_text	size of axis text
axis_title	size of axis title
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
groub_by	create multiple plots based on cell annotation column

Details

Description of parameters. For 3D plots see [dimPlot3D](#)

Value

ggplot

See Also

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)

Examples

`dimPlot2D(gobject)`

---

dimPlot3D	<i>dimPlot3D</i>
-----------	------------------

---

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimPlot3D(  
  gobject,  
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",  
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",  
  dim1_to_use = 1,  
  dim2_to_use = 2,  
  dim3_to_use = 3,  
  select_cell_groups = NULL,  
  select_cells = NULL,  
  show_other_cells = T,  
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",  
  other_point_size = 2,  
  show_NN_network = F,  
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",  
  network_name = "sNN.pca",  
  color_as_factor = T,  
  cell_color = NULL,  
  cell_color_code = NULL,  
  show_cluster_center = F,  
  show_center_label = T,  
  center_point_size = 4,  
  label_size = 4,  
  edge_alpha = NULL,  
  point_size = 3,  
  show_plot = NA,  
  return_plot = NA,
```

```

    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "dim3D"
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>other_point_size</code>	size of not selected cells
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters
<code>show_center_label</code>	plot label of selected clusters
<code>center_point_size</code>	size of center points
<code>label_size</code>	size of labels
<code>edge_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend



Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

See Also

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)

Examples

```
dimPlot3D(gobject)
```

---

doHclust	<i>doHclust</i>
----------	-----------------

---

Description

cluster cells using hierarchical clustering algorithm

Usage

```
doHclust(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  genes_to_use = NULL,  
  dim_reduction_to_use = c("cells", "pca", "umap", "tsne"),  
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",  
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,  
  distance_method = c("pearson", "spearman", "original", "euclidean", "maximum",  
    "manhattan", "canberra", "binary", "minkowski"),  
  agglomeration_method = c("ward.D2", "ward.D", "single", "complete", "average",  
    "mcquitty", "median", "centroid"),  
  k = 10,  
  h = NULL,  
  name = "hclust",  
  return_gobject = TRUE,  
  set_seed = T,  
  seed_number = 1234  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
genes_to_use	subset of genes to use

dim_reduction_to_use	dimension reduction to use
dim_reduction_name	dimensions reduction name
dimensions_to_use	dimensions to use
distance_method	distance method
agglomeration_method	agglomeration method for hclust
k	number of final clusters
h	cut hierarchical tree at height = h
name	name for hierarchical clustering
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
set_seed	set seed
seed_number	number for seed

Details

Description on how to use Kmeans clustering method.

Value

giotto object with new clusters appended to cell metadata

See Also

[hclust](#)

Examples

doHclust(gobject)

---

doHMRP	<i>doHMRP</i>
--------	---------------

---

Description

Run HMRP

Usage

```
doHMRP(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",  
  spatial_genes = NULL,  
  spatial_dimensions = c("sdimx", "sdimy", "sdimz"),  
  dim_reduction_to_use = NULL,  
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",  
)
```

```

    dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
    name = "test",
    k = 10,
    betas = c(0, 2, 50),
    tolerance = 1e-10,
    zscore = c("none", "rowcol", "colrow"),
    numinit = 100,
    python_path = NULL,
    output_folder = NULL,
    overwrite_output = TRUE
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use for HMRF
<code>spatial_genes</code>	spatial genes to use for HMRF
<code>spatial_dimensions</code>	select spatial dimensions to use, default is all possible dimensions
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	use another dimension reduction set as input
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	name of dimension reduction set to use
<code>dimensions_to_use</code>	number of dimensions to use as input
<code>name</code>	name of HMRF run
<code>k</code>	number of HMRF domains
<code>betas</code>	betas to test for
<code>tolerance</code>	tolerance
<code>zscore</code>	zscore
<code>numinit</code>	number of initializations
<code>python_path</code>	python path to use
<code>output_folder</code>	output folder to save results
<code>overwrite_output</code>	overwrite output folder

### Details

Description of HMRF parameters ...

### Value

Creates a directory with results that can be viewed with `viewHMRFresults`

### Examples

```
doHMRF(gobject)
```

doKmeans

*doKmeans***Description**

cluster cells using kmeans algorithm

**Usage**

```
doKmeans(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = c("cells", "pca", "umap", "tsne"),
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
  distance_method = c("original", "pearson", "spearman", "euclidean", "maximum",
    "manhattan", "canberra", "binary", "minkowski"),
  centers = 10,
  iter_max = 100,
  nstart = 1000,
  algorithm = "Hartigan-Wong",
  name = "kmeans",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = T,
  seed_number = 1234
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
genes_to_use	subset of genes to use
dim_reduction_to_use	dimension reduction to use
dim_reduction_name	dimensions reduction name
dimensions_to_use	dimensions to use
distance_method	distance method
centers	number of final clusters
iter_max	kmeans maximum iterations
nstart	kmeans nstart
algorithm	kmeans algorithm
name	name for kmeans clustering
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
set_seed	set seed
seed_number	number for seed

**Details**

Description on how to use Kmeans clustering method.

**Value**

giotto object with new clusters appended to cell metadata

**See Also**

[kmeans](#)

**Examples**

```
doKmeans(gobject)
```

---

doLeidenCluster	<i>doLeidenCluster</i>
-----------------	------------------------

---

**Description**

cluster cells using a NN-network and the Leiden community detection algorithm

**Usage**

```
doLeidenCluster(
  gobject,
  name = "leiden_clus",
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  python_path = NULL,
  resolution = 1,
  weight_col = "weight",
  partition_type = c("RBConfigurationVertexPartition", "ModularityVertexPartition"),
  init_membership = NULL,
  n_iterations = 1000,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = T,
  seed_number = 1234
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
name	name for cluster
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use
python_path	specify specific path to python if required
resolution	resolution
weight_col	weight column to use for edges

partition_type	The type of partition to use for optimisation.
init_membership	initial membership of cells for the partition
n_iterations	number of iterations to run the Leiden algorithm. If the number of iterations is negative, the Leiden algorithm is run until an iteration in which there was no improvement.
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
set_seed	set seed
seed_number	number for seed

### Details

This function is a wrapper for the Leiden algorithm implemented in python, which can detect communities in graphs of millions of nodes (cells), as long as they can fit in memory. See the <https://github.com/vtraag/leidenalg> github page or the <https://leidenalg.readthedocs.io/en/stable/index.html> readthedocs page for more information.

Partition types available and information:

- **RBCConfigurationVertexPartition**: Implements Reichardt and Bornholdt's Potts model with a configuration null model. This quality function is well-defined only for positive edge weights. This quality function uses a linear resolution parameter.
- **ModularityVertexPartition**: Implements modularity. This quality function is well-defined only for positive edge weights. It does *not* use the resolution parameter

Set *weight\_col* = *NULL* to give equal weight (=1) to each edge.

### Value

giotto object with new clusters appended to cell metadata

### Examples

```
doLeidenCluster(gobject)
```

---

doLeidenSubCluster	<i>doLeidenSubCluster</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

---

### Description

Further subcluster cells using a NN-network and the Leiden algorithm

### Usage

```
doLeidenSubCluster(
  gobject,
  name = "sub_pleiden_clus",
  cluster_column = NULL,
  selected_clusters = NULL,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values
    = "normalized"),
```

```

    hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
    hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
    use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
    min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
    pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
    nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
    k_neighbors = 10,
    resolution = 0.5,
    n_iterations = 500,
    python_path = NULL,
    nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
    network_name = "sNN.pca",
    return_gobject = TRUE,
    verbose = T
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name for new clustering result
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column to subcluster
<code>selected_clusters</code>	only do subclustering on these clusters
<code>hvg_param</code>	parameters for calculateHVG
<code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code>	threshold for detection in min percentage of cells
<code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code>	threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection
<code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code>	forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA
<code>min_nr_of_hvg</code>	minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA
<code>pca_param</code>	parameters for runPCA
<code>nn_param</code>	parameters for parameters for createNearestNetwork
<code>k_neighbors</code>	number of k for createNearestNetwork
<code>resolution</code>	resolution of Leiden clustering
<code>n_iterations</code>	number of iterations to run the Leiden algorithm.
<code>python_path</code>	specify specific path to python if required
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>verbose</code>	verbose

### Details

This function performs subclustering using the Leiden algorithm on selected clusters. The systematic steps are:

- 1. subset Giotto object

- 2. identify highly variable genes
- 3. run PCA
- 4. create nearest neighbouring network
- 5. do Leiden clustering

### Value

giotto object with new subclusters appended to cell metadata

### See Also

[doLeidenCluster](#)

### Examples

```
doLeidenSubCluster(gobject)
```

---

doLouvainCluster	<i>doLouvainCluster</i>
------------------	-------------------------

---

### Description

cluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain algorithm.

### Usage

```
doLouvainCluster(
  gobject,
  version = c("community", "multinet"),
  name = "louvain_clus",
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  python_path = NULL,
  resolution = 1,
  weight_col = NULL,
  gamma = 1,
  omega = 1,
  louv_random = F,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = F,
  seed_number = 1234,
  ...
)
```

### Arguments

gobject	giotto object
version	implemented version of Louvain clustering to use
name	name for cluster
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)



network_name	name of NN network to use
python_path	[community] specify specific path to python if required
resolution	[community] resolution
weight_col	weight column name
gamma	[multinet] Resolution parameter for modularity in the generalized louvain method.
omega	[multinet] Inter-layer weight parameter in the generalized louvain method
louv_random	[community] Will randomize the node evaluation order and the community evaluation order to get different partitions at each call
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
set_seed	set seed
seed_number	number for seed
...	additional parameters

### Details

Louvain clustering using the community or multinet implementation of the louvain clustering algorithm.

### Value

giotto object with new clusters appended to cell metadata

### See Also

[doLouvainCluster\\_community](#) and [doLouvainCluster\\_multinet](#)

### Examples

```
doLouvainCluster(gobject)
```

---

```
doLouvainCluster_community
doLouvainCluster_community
```

---

### Description

cluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain algorithm from the community module in Python

### Usage

```
doLouvainCluster_community(
  gobject,
  name = "louvain_clus",
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  python_path = NULL,
  resolution = 1,
  weight_col = NULL,
 louv_random = F,
```

```

    return_gobject = TRUE,
    set_seed = F,
    seed_number = 1234
  )

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name for cluster
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use
<code>python_path</code>	specify specific path to python if required
<code>resolution</code>	resolution
<code>weight_col</code>	weight column to use for edges
<code>louv_random</code>	Will randomize the node evaluation order and the community evaluation order to get different partitions at each call
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>set_seed</code>	set seed
<code>seed_number</code>	number for seed

### Details

This function is a wrapper for the Louvain algorithm implemented in Python, which can detect communities in graphs of nodes (cells). See the <https://python-louvain.readthedocs.io/en/latest/index.html> readthedocs page for more information.

Set `weight_col = NULL` to give equal weight (=1) to each edge.

### Value

giotto object with new clusters appended to cell metadata

### Examples

```
doLouvainCluster_community(gobject)
```

---

```
doLouvainCluster_multinet
doLouvainCluster_multinet
```

---

### Description

cluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain algorithm from the multinet package in R.

**Usage**

```
doLouvainCluster_multinet(
  gobject,
  name = "louvain_clus",
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  gamma = 1,
  omega = 1,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = F,
  seed_number = 1234
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
name	name for cluster
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use
gamma	Resolution parameter for modularity in the generalized louvain method.
omega	Inter-layer weight parameter in the generalized louvain method.
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
set_seed	set seed
seed_number	number for seed

**Details**

See [glouvain\\_ml](#) from the multinet package in R for more information.

**Value**

giotto object with new clusters appended to cell metadata

**Examples**

```
doLouvainCluster_multinet(gobject)
```

---

doLouvainSubCluster	<i>doLouvainSubCluster</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

---

**Description**

subcluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain algorithm

**Usage**

```
doLouvainSubCluster(
  gobject,
  name = "sub_louvain_clus",
  version = c("community", "multinet"),
  cluster_column = NULL,
  selected_clusters = NULL,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values
    = "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
  k_neighbors = 10,
  resolution = 0.5,
  gamma = 1,
  omega = 1,
  python_path = NULL,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  verbose = T
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name for new clustering result
<code>version</code>	version of Louvain algorithm to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column to subcluster
<code>selected_clusters</code>	only do subclustering on these clusters
<code>hvg_param</code>	parameters for calculateHVG
<code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code>	threshold for detection in min percentage of cells
<code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code>	threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection
<code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code>	forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA
<code>min_nr_of_hvg</code>	minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA
<code>pca_param</code>	parameters for runPCA
<code>nn_param</code>	parameters for parameters for createNearestNetwork
<code>k_neighbors</code>	number of k for createNearestNetwork
<code>resolution</code>	resolution for community algorithm
<code>gamma</code>	gamma
<code>omega</code>	omega

python_path	specify specific path to python if required
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
verbose	verbose

### Details

This function performs subclustering using the Louvain algorithm on selected clusters. The systematic steps are:

- 1. subset Giotto object
- 2. identify highly variable genes
- 3. run PCA
- 4. create nearest neighbouring network
- 5. do Louvain clustering

### Value

giotto object with new subclusters appended to cell metadata

### See Also

[doLouvainCluster\\_multinet](#) and [doLouvainCluster\\_community](#)

### Examples

```
doLouvainSubCluster(gobject)
```

---

```
doLouvainSubCluster_community
doLouvainSubCluster_community
```

---

### Description

subcluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain community detection algorithm

### Usage

```
doLouvainSubCluster_community(
  gobject,
  name = "sub_louvain_comm_clus",
  cluster_column = NULL,
  selected_clusters = NULL,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values
    = "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
```

```

min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
k_neighbors = 10,
resolution = 0.5,
python_path = NULL,
nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
network_name = "sNN.pca",
return_gobject = TRUE,
verbose = T
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name for new clustering result
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column to subcluster
<code>selected_clusters</code>	only do subclustering on these clusters
<code>hvg_param</code>	parameters for calculateHVG
<code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code>	threshold for detection in min percentage of cells
<code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code>	threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection
<code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code>	forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA
<code>min_nr_of_hvg</code>	minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA
<code>pca_param</code>	parameters for runPCA
<code>nn_param</code>	parameters for parameters for createNearestNetwork
<code>k_neighbors</code>	number of k for createNearestNetwork
<code>resolution</code>	resolution
<code>python_path</code>	specify specific path to python if required
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>verbose</code>	verbose

### Details

This function performs subclustering using the Louvain community algorithm on selected clusters. The systematic steps are:

- 1. subset Giotto object
- 2. identify highly variable genes
- 3. run PCA
- 4. create nearest neighbouring network
- 5. do Louvain community clustering

**Value**

giotto object with new subclusters appended to cell metadata

**See Also**

[doLouvainCluster\\_community](#)

**Examples**

```
doLouvainSubCluster_community(gobject)
```

---

```
doLouvainSubCluster_multinet
```

```
doLouvainSubCluster_multinet
```

---

**Description**

subcluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain multinet detection algorithm

**Usage**

```
doLouvainSubCluster_multinet(
  gobject,
  name = "sub_louvain_mult_clus",
  cluster_column = NULL,
  selected_clusters = NULL,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values
    = "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
  k_neighbors = 10,
  gamma = 1,
  omega = 1,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  verbose = T
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name for new clustering result
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column to subcluster
<code>selected_clusters</code>	only do subclustering on these clusters

hvg_param	parameters for calculateHVG
hvg_min_perc_cells	threshold for detection in min percentage of cells
hvg_mean_expr_det	threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection
use_all_genes_as_hvg	forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA
min_nr_of_hvg	minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA
pca_param	parameters for runPCA
nn_param	parameters for parameters for createNearestNetwork
k_neighbors	number of k for createNearestNetwork
gamma	gamma
omega	omega
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
verbose	verbose

## Details

This function performs subclustering using the Louvain multinet algorithm on selected clusters. The systematic steps are:

- 1. subset Giotto object
- 2. identify highly variable genes
- 3. run PCA
- 4. create nearest neighbouring network
- 5. do Louvain multinet clustering

## Value

giotto object with new subclusters appended to cell metadata

## See Also

[doLouvainCluster\\_multinet](#)

## Examples

```
doLouvainSubCluster_multinet(gobject)
```



---

doRandomWalkCluster	<i>doRandomWalkCluster</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

---

## Description

Cluster cells using a random walk approach.

## Usage

```
doRandomWalkCluster(  
  gobject,  
  name = "random_walk_clus",  
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",  
  network_name = "sNN.pca",  
  walk_steps = 4,  
  walk_clusters = 10,  
  walk_weights = NA,  
  return_gobject = TRUE,  
  set_seed = F,  
  seed_number = 1234  
)
```

## Arguments

gobject	giotto object
name	name for cluster
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use
walk_steps	number of walking steps
walk_clusters	number of final clusters
walk_weights	cluster column defining the walk weights
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
set_seed	set seed
seed_number	number for seed

## Details

See [cluster\\_walktrap](#) function from the igraph package in R for more information.

## Value

giotto object with new clusters appended to cell metadata

## Examples

```
doRandomWalkCluster(gobject)
```

doSNNCluster

*doSNNCluster***Description**

Cluster cells using a SNN cluster approach.

**Usage**

```
doSNNCluster(
  gobject,
  name = "sNN_clus",
  nn_network_to_use = "kNN",
  network_name = "kNN.pca",
  k = 20,
  eps = 4,
  minPts = 16,
  borderPoints = TRUE,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = F,
  seed_number = 1234
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name for cluster
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (only works on kNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of kNN network to use
<code>k</code>	Neighborhood size for nearest neighbor sparsification to create the shared NN graph.
<code>eps</code>	Two objects are only reachable from each other if they share at least <code>eps</code> nearest neighbors.
<code>minPts</code>	minimum number of points that share at least <code>eps</code> nearest neighbors for a point to be considered a core points.
<code>borderPoints</code>	should borderPoints be assigned to clusters like in DBSCAN?
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>set_seed</code>	set seed
<code>seed_number</code>	number for seed

**Details**

See [sNNclust](#) from dbscan package

**Value**

giotto object with new clusters appended to cell metadata

**Examples**

```
doSNNCluster(gobject)
```

---

```
do_permuttest_random    do_permuttest_random
```

---

**Description**

calculate random values

Performs permutation test on subsets of a matrix

**Usage**

```
do_permuttest_random(
  expr_values,
  select_ind,
  other_ind,
  name = "perm_1",
  mean_method,
  offset = 0.1
)

do_permuttest(
  expr_values,
  select_ind,
  other_ind,
  n_perm = 1000,
  adjust_method = "fdr",
  mean_method,
  offset = 0.1,
  cores = 2
)
```

**Examples**

```
do_permuttest_random()
do_permuttest_random()
```

---

```
DT_removeNA                    DT_removeNA
```

---

**Description**

set NA values to 0 in a data.table object

**Usage**

```
DT_removeNA(DT)
```

**Arguments**

DT                    data.table

---

estimateImageBg	<i>estimateImageBg</i>
-----------------	------------------------

---

**Description**

helps to estimate which color is the background color of your plot

**Usage**

```
estimateImageBg(mg_object, top_color_range = 1:50)
```

**Arguments**

mg_object	magick image or Giotto image object
top_color_range	top possible background colors to return

**Value**

vector of pixel color frequencies and an associated barplot

**Examples**

```
estimateImageBg(mg_object)
```

---

exportGiottoViewer	<i>exportGiottoViewer</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

---

**Description**

compute highly variable genes

**Usage**

```
exportGiottoViewer(
  gobject,
  output_directory = NULL,
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  factor_annotations = NULL,
  numeric_annotations = NULL,
  dim_reductions,
  dim_reduction_names,
  expression_values = c("scaled", "normalized", "custom"),
  dim_red_rounding = NULL,
  dim_red_rescale = c(-20, 20),
  expression_rounding = 2,
  overwrite_dir = T,
  verbose = T
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
output_directory	directory where to save the files
spat_enr_names	spatial enrichment results to include for annotations
factor_annotations	giotto cell annotations to view as factor
numeric_annotations	giotto cell annotations to view as numeric
dim_reductions	high level dimension reductions to view
dim_reduction_names	specific dimension reduction names
expression_values	expression values to use in Viewer
dim_red_rounding	numerical indicating how to round the coordinates
dim_red_rescale	numericals to rescale the coordinates
expression_rounding	numerical indicating how to round the expression data
overwrite_dir	overwrite files in the directory if it already existed
verbose	be verbose

Details

Giotto Viewer expects the results from Giotto Analyzer in a specific format, which is provided by this function. To include enrichment results from [createSpatialEnrich](#) include the provided spatial enrichment name (default PAGE or rank) and add the gene signature names (.e.g cell types) to the numeric annotations parameter.

Value

writes the necessary output to use in Giotto Viewer

Examples

```
exportGiottoViewer(gobject)
```

---

exprCellCellcom	<i>exprCellCellcom</i>
-----------------	------------------------

---

Description

Cell-Cell communication scores based on expression only

**Usage**

```

exprCellCellcom(
  gobject,
  cluster_column = "cell_types",
  random_iter = 1000,
  gene_set_1,
  gene_set_2,
  log2FC_addendum = 0.1,
  adjust_method = c("fdr", "bonferroni", "BH", "holm", "hochberg", "hommel", "BY",
    "none"),
  adjust_target = c("genes", "cells"),
  verbose = T
)

```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell type information
<code>random_iter</code>	number of iterations
<code>gene_set_1</code>	first specific gene set from gene pairs
<code>gene_set_2</code>	second specific gene set from gene pairs
<code>log2FC_addendum</code>	addendum to add when calculating log2FC
<code>adjust_method</code>	which method to adjust p-values
<code>adjust_target</code>	adjust multiple hypotheses at the cell or gene level
<code>verbose</code>	verbose

**Details**

Statistical framework to identify if pairs of genes (such as ligand-receptor combinations) are expressed at higher levels than expected based on a reshuffled null distribution of gene expression values, without considering the spatial position of cells. More details will follow soon.

**Value**

Cell-Cell communication scores for gene pairs based on expression only

**Examples**

```
exprCellCellcom(gobject)
```

---

extractNearestNetwork	<i>extractNearestNetwork</i>
-----------------------	------------------------------

---

**Description**

Extracts a NN-network from a Giotto object

**Usage**

```
extractNearestNetwork(  
  gobject,  
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",  
  network_name = "sNN.pca",  
  output = c("igraph", "data.table")  
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
nn_network_to_use	kNN or sNN
network_name	name of NN network to be used
output	return a igraph or data.table object

**Value**

igraph or data.table object

**Examples**

```
extractNearestNetwork(gobject)
```

---

fDataDT	<i>fDataDT</i>
---------	----------------

---

**Description**

show gene metadata

**Usage**

```
fDataDT(gobject)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
---------	---------------

**Value**

data.table with gene metadata

**Examples**

```
pDataDT(gobject)
```

---

```
filterCellProximityGenes
      filterCellProximityGenes
```

---

**Description**

Filter cell proximity gene scores.

**Usage**

```
filterCellProximityGenes(
  cpgObject,
  min_cells = 4,
  min_cells_expr = 1,
  min_int_cells = 4,
  min_int_cells_expr = 1,
  min_fdr = 0.1,
  min_spat_diff = 0.2,
  min_log2_fc = 0.2,
  min_zscore = 2,
  zscores_column = c("cell_type", "genes"),
  direction = c("both", "up", "down")
)
```

**Arguments**

cpgObject	cell proximity gene score object
min_cells	minimum number of source cell type
min_cells_expr	minimum expression level for source cell type
min_int_cells	minimum number of interacting neighbor cell type
min_int_cells_expr	minimum expression level for interacting neighbor cell type
min_fdr	minimum adjusted p-value
min_spat_diff	minimum absolute spatial expression difference
min_log2_fc	minimum log2 fold-change
min_zscore	minimum z-score change
zscores_column	calculate z-scores over cell types or genes
direction	differential expression directions to keep

**Value**

cpgObject that contains the filtered differential gene scores

**Examples**

```
filterCellProximityGenes(gobject)
```



---

filterCombinations	<i>filterCombinations</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

---

## Description

Shows how many genes and cells are lost with combinations of thresholds.

## Usage

```
filterCombinations(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("raw", "normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  expression_thresholds = c(1, 2),
  gene_det_in_min_cells = c(5, 50),
  min_det_genes_per_cell = c(200, 400),
  scale_x_axis = "identity",
  x_axis_offset = 0,
  scale_y_axis = "identity",
  y_axis_offset = 0,
  show_plot = TRUE,
  return_plot = FALSE,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "filterCombinations"
)
```

## Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
expression_thresholds	all thresholds to consider a gene expressed
gene_det_in_min_cells	minimum number of cells that should express a gene to consider that gene further
min_det_genes_per_cell	minimum number of expressed genes per cell to consider that cell further
scale_x_axis	ggplot transformation for x-axis (e.g. log2)
x_axis_offset	x-axis offset to be used together with the scaling transformation
scale_y_axis	ggplot transformation for y-axis (e.g. log2)
y_axis_offset	y-axis offset to be used together with the scaling transformation
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return only ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

## Details

Creates a scatterplot that visualizes the number of genes and cells that are lost with a specific combination of a gene and cell threshold given an arbitrary cutoff to call a gene expressed. This function can be used to make an informed decision at the filtering step with filterGiotto.

## Value

list of data.table and ggplot object

## Examples

```
filterCombinations(gobject)
```

---

filterCPG	<i>filterCPG</i>
-----------	------------------

---

## Description

Filter cell proximity gene scores.

## Usage

```
filterCPG(
  cpgObject,
  min_cells = 4,
  min_cells_expr = 1,
  min_int_cells = 4,
  min_int_cells_expr = 1,
  min_fdr = 0.1,
  min_spat_diff = 0.2,
  min_log2_fc = 0.2,
  min_zscore = 2,
  zscores_column = c("cell_type", "genes"),
  direction = c("both", "up", "down")
)
```

## Arguments

cpgObject	cell proximity gene score object
min_cells	minimum number of source cell type
min_cells_expr	minimum expression level for source cell type
min_int_cells	minimum number of interacting neighbor cell type
min_int_cells_expr	minimum expression level for interacting neighbor cell type
min_fdr	minimum adjusted p-value
min_spat_diff	minimum absolute spatial expression difference
min_log2_fc	minimum log2 fold-change
min_zscore	minimum z-score change
zscores_column	calculate z-scores over cell types or genes
direction	differential expression directions to keep

**Value**

cpgObject that contains the filtered differential gene scores

**Examples**

```
filterCPG(gobject)
```

---

filterDistributions	<i>filterDistributions</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

---

**Description**

show gene or cell distribution after filtering on expression threshold

**Usage**

```
filterDistributions(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("raw", "normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  expression_threshold = 1,
  detection = c("genes", "cells"),
  plot_type = c("histogram", "violin"),
  nr_bins = 30,
  fill_color = "lightblue",
  scale_axis = "identity",
  axis_offset = 0,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "filterDistributions"
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
expression_threshold	threshold to consider a gene expressed
detection	consider genes or cells
plot_type	type of plot
nr_bins	number of bins for histogram plot
fill_color	fill color for plots
scale_axis	ggplot transformation for axis (e.g. log2)
axis_offset	offset to be used together with the scaling transformation
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object

save\_plot            directly save the plot [boolean]  
 save\_param          list of saving parameters from [all\\_plots\\_save\\_function](#)  
 default\_save\_name            default save name for saving, don't change, change save\_name in save\_param

### Value

ggplot object

### Examples

```
filterDistributions(gobject)
```

---

filterGiotto	<i>filterGiotto</i>
--------------	---------------------

---

### Description

filter Giotto object based on expression threshold

### Usage

```
filterGiotto(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("raw", "normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  expression_threshold = 1,
  gene_det_in_min_cells = 100,
  min_det_genes_per_cell = 100,
  verbose = F
)
```

### Arguments

gobject            giotto object  
 expression\_values            expression values to use  
 expression\_threshold            threshold to consider a gene expressed  
 gene\_det\_in\_min\_cells            minimum # of cells that need to express a gene  
 min\_det\_genes\_per\_cell            minimum # of genes that need to be detected in a cell  
 verbose            verbose

### Details

The function [filterCombinations](#) can be used to explore the effect of different parameter values.

### Value

giotto object

**Examples**

```
filterGiotto(gobject)
```

---

```
findCellProximityGenes
```

```
findCellProximityGenes
```

---

**Description**

Identifies genes that are differentially expressed due to proximity to other cell types.

**Usage**

```
findCellProximityGenes(
  gobject,
  expression_values = "normalized",
  selected_genes = NULL,
  cluster_column,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  minimum_unique_cells = 1,
  minimum_unique_int_cells = 1,
  diff_test = c("permutation", "limma", "t.test", "wilcox"),
  mean_method = c("arithmetic", "geometric"),
  offset = 0.1,
  adjust_method = c("bonferroni", "BH", "holm", "hochberg", "hommel", "BY", "fdr",
    "none"),
  nr_permutations = 1000,
  exclude_selected_cells_from_test = T,
  do_parallel = TRUE,
  cores = NA
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>selected_genes</code>	subset of selected genes (optional)
<code>cluster_column</code>	name of column to use for cell types
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>minimum_unique_cells</code>	minimum number of target cells required
<code>minimum_unique_int_cells</code>	minimum number of interacting cells required
<code>diff_test</code>	which differential expression test
<code>mean_method</code>	method to use to calculate the mean
<code>offset</code>	offset value to use when calculating log2 ratio

`adjust_method`    which method to adjust p-values  
`nr_permutations`    number of permutations if `diff_test = permutation`  
`exclude_selected_cells_from_test`  
                      exclude interacting cells other cells  
`do_parallel`        run calculations in parallel with `mclapply`  
`cores`                number of cores to use if `do_parallel = TRUE`

## Details

Function to calculate if genes are differentially expressed in cell types when they interact (approximated by physical proximity) with other cell types. The results `data.table` in the `cpgObject` contains - at least - the following columns:

- `genes`: All or selected list of tested genes
- `sel`: average gene expression in the interacting cells from the target cell type
- `other`: average gene expression in the NOT-interacting cells from the target cell type
- `log2fc`: log2 fold-change between `sel` and `other`
- `diff`: spatial expression difference between `sel` and `other`
- `p.value`: associated p-value
- `p.adj`: adjusted p-value
- `cell_type`: target cell type
- `int_cell_type`: interacting cell type
- `nr_select`: number of cells for selected target cell type
- `int_nr_select`: number of cells for interacting cell type
- `nr_other`: number of other cells of selected target cell type
- `int_nr_other`: number of other cells for interacting cell type
- `unif_int`: cell-cell interaction

## Value

`cpgObject` that contains the differential gene scores

## Examples

```
findCellProximityGenes(gobject)
```

---

```
findCellProximityGenes_per_interaction
    findCellProximityGenes_per_interaction
```

---

### Description

Identifies genes that are differentially expressed due to proximity to other cell types.

### Usage

```
findCellProximityGenes_per_interaction(
  expr_values,
  cell_metadata,
  annot_spatnetwork,
  sel_int,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  minimum_unique_cells = 1,
  minimum_unique_int_cells = 1,
  exclude_selected_cells_from_test = T,
  diff_test = c("permutation", "limma", "t.test", "wilcox"),
  mean_method = c("arithmetic", "geometric"),
  offset = 0.1,
  adjust_method = "bonferroni",
  nr_permutations = 100,
  cores = 1
)
```

### Examples

```
findCellProximityGenes_per_interaction()
```

---

```
findCPG          findCPG
```

---

### Description

Identifies genes that are differentially expressed due to proximity to other cell types.

### Usage

```
findCPG(
  gobject,
  expression_values = "normalized",
  selected_genes = NULL,
  cluster_column,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  minimum_unique_cells = 1,
  minimum_unique_int_cells = 1,
  diff_test = c("permutation", "limma", "t.test", "wilcox"),
```

```

mean_method = c("arithmetic", "geometric"),
offset = 0.1,
adjust_method = c("bonferroni", "BH", "holm", "hochberg", "hommel", "BY", "fdr",
  "none"),
nr_permutations = 100,
exclude_selected_cells_from_test = T,
do_parallel = TRUE,
cores = NA
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>selected_genes</code>	subset of selected genes (optional)
<code>cluster_column</code>	name of column to use for cell types
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>minimum_unique_cells</code>	minimum number of target cells required
<code>minimum_unique_int_cells</code>	minimum number of interacting cells required
<code>diff_test</code>	which differential expression test
<code>mean_method</code>	method to use to calculate the mean
<code>offset</code>	offset value to use when calculating log2 ratio
<code>adjust_method</code>	which method to adjust p-values
<code>nr_permutations</code>	number of permutations if <code>diff_test = permutation</code>
<code>exclude_selected_cells_from_test</code>	exclude interacting cells other cells
<code>do_parallel</code>	run calculations in parallel with <code>mclapply</code>
<code>cores</code>	number of cores to use if <code>do_parallel = TRUE</code>

### Details

Function to calculate if genes are differentially expressed in cell types when they interact (approximated by physical proximity) with other cell types. The results `data.table` in the `cpgObject` contains - at least - the following columns:

- `genes`: All or selected list of tested genes
- `sel`: average gene expression in the interacting cells from the target cell type
- `other`: average gene expression in the NOT-interacting cells from the target cell type
- `log2fc`: log2 fold-change between `sel` and `other`
- `diff`: spatial expression difference between `sel` and `other`
- `p.value`: associated p-value
- `p.adj`: adjusted p-value



- cell\_type: target cell type
- int\_cell\_type: interacting cell type
- nr\_select: number of cells for selected target cell type
- int\_nr\_select: number of cells for interacting cell type
- nr\_other: number of other cells of selected target cell type
- int\_nr\_other: number of other cells for interacting cell type
- unif\_int: cell-cell interaction

### Value

cpgObject that contains the differential gene scores

### Examples

```
findCPG(gobject)
```

---

findGiniMarkers	<i>findGiniMarkers</i>
-----------------	------------------------

---

### Description

Identify marker genes for selected clusters based on gini detection and expression scores.

### Usage

```
findGiniMarkers(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  group_1 = NULL,
  group_2 = NULL,
  min_expr_gini_score = 0.2,
  min_det_gini_score = 0.2,
  detection_threshold = 0,
  rank_score = 1,
  min_genes = 5
)
```

### Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	gene expression values to use
cluster_column	clusters to use
subset_clusters	selection of clusters to compare
group_1	group 1 cluster IDs from cluster_column for pairwise comparison
group_2	group 2 cluster IDs from cluster_column for pairwise comparison

min\_expr\_gini\_score      filter on minimum gini coefficient for expression  
 min\_det\_gini\_score      filter on minimum gini coefficient for detection  
 detection\_threshold      detection threshold for gene expression  
 rank\_score      rank scores for both detection and expression to include  
 min\_genes      minimum number of top genes to return

## Details

Detection of marker genes using the [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gini\\_coefficient](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gini_coefficient) gini coefficient is based on the following steps/principles per gene:

- 1. calculate average expression per cluster
- 2. calculate detection fraction per cluster
- 3. calculate gini-coefficient for av. expression values over all clusters
- 4. calculate gini-coefficient for detection fractions over all clusters
- 5. convert gini-scores to rank scores
- 6. for each gene create combined score = detection rank x expression rank x expr gini-coefficient x detection gini-coefficient
- 7. for each gene sort on expression and detection rank and combined score

As a results "top gini" genes are genes that are very selectively expressed in a specific cluster, however not always expressed in all cells of that cluster. In other words highly specific, but not necessarily sensitive at the single-cell level.

To perform differential expression between cluster groups you need to specify cluster IDs to the parameters *group\_1* and *group\_2*.

## Value

data.table with marker genes

## Examples

```
findGiniMarkers(gobject)
```

---

```
findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all
      findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all
```

---

## Description

Identify marker genes for all clusters in a one vs all manner based on gini detection and expression scores.

**Usage**

```
findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  cluster_column,  
  subset_clusters = NULL,  
  min_expr_gini_score = 0.5,  
  min_det_gini_score = 0.5,  
  detection_threshold = 0,  
  rank_score = 1,  
  min_genes = 4,  
  verbose = TRUE  
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	gene expression values to use
cluster_column	clusters to use
subset_clusters	selection of clusters to compare
min_expr_gini_score	filter on minimum gini coefficient on expression
min_det_gini_score	filter on minimum gini coefficient on detection
detection_threshold	detection threshold for gene expression
rank_score	rank scores for both detection and expression to include
min_genes	minimum number of top genes to return
verbose	be verbose

**Value**

data.table with marker genes

**See Also**

[findGiniMarkers](#)

**Examples**

```
findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all(gobject)
```

---

findMarkers

*findMarkers*


---

## Description

Identify marker genes for selected clusters.

## Usage

```
findMarkers(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column = NULL,
  method = c("scrn", "gini", "mast"),
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  group_1 = NULL,
  group_2 = NULL,
  min_expr_gini_score = 0.5,
  min_det_gini_score = 0.5,
  detection_threshold = 0,
  rank_score = 1,
  min_genes = 4,
  group_1_name = NULL,
  group_2_name = NULL,
  adjust_columns = NULL,
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	gene expression values to use
cluster_column	clusters to use
method	method to use to detect differentially expressed genes
subset_clusters	selection of clusters to compare
group_1	group 1 cluster IDs from cluster_column for pairwise comparison
group_2	group 2 cluster IDs from cluster_column for pairwise comparison
min_expr_gini_score	gini: filter on minimum gini coefficient for expression
min_det_gini_score	gini: filter minimum gini coefficient for detection
detection_threshold	gini: detection threshold for gene expression
rank_score	gini: rank scores to include
min_genes	minimum number of top genes to return (for gini)
group_1_name	mast: custom name for group_1 clusters

```

group_2_name    mast: custom name for group_2 clusters
adjust_columns  mast: column in pDataDT to adjust for (e.g. detection rate)
...            additional parameters for the findMarkers function in scran or zlm function in
               MAST

```

### Details

Wrapper for all individual functions to detect marker genes for clusters.

### Value

data.table with marker genes

### See Also

[findScranMarkers](#), [findGiniMarkers](#) and [findMastMarkers](#)

### Examples

```
findMarkers(gobject)
```

---

```

findMarkers_one_vs_all
               findMarkers_one_vs_all

```

---

### Description

Identify marker genes for all clusters in a one vs all manner.

### Usage

```

findMarkers_one_vs_all(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  method = c("scrn", "gini", "mast"),
  pval = 0.01,
  logFC = 0.5,
  min_genes = 10,
  min_expr_gini_score = 0.5,
  min_det_gini_score = 0.5,
  detection_threshold = 0,
  rank_score = 1,
  adjust_columns = NULL,
  verbose = TRUE,
  ...
)

```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	clusters to use
<code>subset_clusters</code>	selection of clusters to compare
<code>method</code>	method to use to detect differentially expressed genes
<code>pval</code>	scan & mast: filter on minimal p-value
<code>logFC</code>	scan & mast: filter on logFC
<code>min_genes</code>	minimum genes to keep per cluster, overrides pval and logFC
<code>min_expr_gini_score</code>	gini: filter on minimum gini coefficient for expression
<code>min_det_gini_score</code>	gini: filter minimum gini coefficient for detection
<code>detection_threshold</code>	gini: detection threshold for gene expression
<code>rank_score</code>	gini: rank scores to include
<code>adjust_columns</code>	mast: column in pDataDT to adjust for (e.g. detection rate)
<code>verbose</code>	be verbose
<code>...</code>	additional parameters for the findMarkers function in scan or zlm function in MAST

**Details**

Wrapper for all one vs all functions to detect marker genes for clusters.

**Value**

data.table with marker genes

**See Also**

[findScranMarkers\\_one\\_vs\\_all](#), [findGiniMarkers\\_one\\_vs\\_all](#) and [findMastMarkers\\_one\\_vs\\_all](#)

**Examples**

```
findMarkers_one_vs_all(gobject)
```

---

findMastMarkers	<i>findMastMarkers</i>
-----------------	------------------------

---

## Description

Identify marker genes for selected clusters based on the MAST package.

## Usage

```
findMastMarkers(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  group_1 = NULL,
  group_1_name = NULL,
  group_2 = NULL,
  group_2_name = NULL,
  adjust_columns = NULL,
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	clusters to use
<code>group_1</code>	group 1 cluster IDs from <code>cluster_column</code> for pairwise comparison
<code>group_1_name</code>	custom name for <code>group_1</code> clusters
<code>group_2</code>	group 2 cluster IDs from <code>cluster_column</code> for pairwise comparison
<code>group_2_name</code>	custom name for <code>group_2</code> clusters
<code>adjust_columns</code>	column in <code>pDataDT</code> to adjust for (e.g. detection rate)
<code>...</code>	additional parameters for the <code>zlm</code> function in MAST

## Details

This is a minimal convenience wrapper around the [zlm](#) from the MAST package to detect differentially expressed genes.

## Value

data.table with marker genes

## Examples

```
findMastMarkers(gobject)
```

---

```
findMastMarkers_one_vs_all
      findMastMarkers_one_vs_all
```

---

## Description

Identify marker genes for all clusters in a one vs all manner based on the MAST package.

## Usage

```
findMastMarkers_one_vs_all(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  adjust_columns = NULL,
  pval = 0.001,
  logFC = 1,
  min_genes = 10,
  verbose = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	clusters to use
<code>subset_clusters</code>	selection of clusters to compare
<code>adjust_columns</code>	column in pDataDT to adjust for (e.g. detection rate)
<code>pval</code>	filter on minimal p-value
<code>logFC</code>	filter on logFC
<code>min_genes</code>	minimum genes to keep per cluster, overrides pval and logFC
<code>verbose</code>	be verbose
<code>...</code>	additional parameters for the zlm function in MAST

## Value

data.table with marker genes

## See Also

[findMastMarkers](#)

## Examples

```
findMastMarkers_one_vs_all(gobject)
```



---

findNetworkNeighbors    *findNetworkNeighbors*


---

**Description**

Find the spatial neighbors for a selected group of cells within the selected spatial network.

**Usage**

```
findNetworkNeighbors(
  gobject,
  spatial_network_name,
  source_cell_ids = NULL,
  name = "nb_cells"
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	Giotto object
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network
source_cell_ids	cell ids for which you want to know the spatial neighbors
name	name of the results

**Value**

data.table

**Examples**

```
findNetworkNeighbors(gobject)
```

---

findScranMarkers    *findScranMarkers*


---

**Description**

Identify marker genes for all or selected clusters based on scran's implementation of findMarkers.

**Usage**

```
findScranMarkers(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  group_1 = NULL,
  group_2 = NULL,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	clusters to use
<code>subset_clusters</code>	selection of clusters to compare
<code>group_1</code>	group 1 cluster IDs from <code>cluster_column</code> for pairwise comparison
<code>group_2</code>	group 2 cluster IDs from <code>cluster_column</code> for pairwise comparison
<code>...</code>	additional parameters for the <code>findMarkers</code> function in <code>scrn</code>

**Details**

This is a minimal convenience wrapper around the [findMarkers](#) function from the `scrn` package.

To perform differential expression between cluster groups you need to specify cluster IDs to the parameters `group_1` and `group_2`.

**Value**

data.table with marker genes

**Examples**

```
findScranMarkers(gobject)
```

---

```
findScranMarkers_one_vs_all
  findScranMarkers_one_vs_all
```

---

**Description**

Identify marker genes for all clusters in a one vs all manner based on `scrn`'s implementation of `findMarkers`.

**Usage**

```
findScranMarkers_one_vs_all(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  pval = 0.01,
  logFC = 0.5,
  min_genes = 10,
  verbose = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	gene expression values to use
cluster_column	clusters to use
subset_clusters	subset of clusters to use
pval	filter on minimal p-value
logFC	filter on logFC
min_genes	minimum genes to keep per cluster, overrides pval and logFC
verbose	be verbose
...	additional parameters for the findMarkers function in scrn

Value

data.table with marker genes

See Also

[findScranMarkers](#)

Examples

```
findScranMarkers_one_vs_all(gobject)
```

---

find_grid_2D	<i>find_grid_2D</i>
--------------	---------------------

---

Description

find grid location in 2D

Usage

```
find_grid_2D(grid_DT, x_loc, y_loc)
```

---

find_grid_3D	<i>find_grid_3D</i>
--------------	---------------------

---

Description

find grid location in 3D

Usage

```
find_grid_3D(grid_DT, x_loc, y_loc, z_loc)
```

---

<code>find_grid_x</code>	<i>find_grid_x</i>
--------------------------	--------------------

---

**Description**

find grid location on x-axis

**Usage**

`find_grid_x(grid_DT, x_loc)`

---

<code>find_grid_y</code>	<i>find_grid_y</i>
--------------------------	--------------------

---

**Description**

find grid location on y-axis

**Usage**

`find_grid_y(grid_DT, y_loc)`

---

<code>find_grid_z</code>	<i>find_grid_z</i>
--------------------------	--------------------

---

**Description**

find grid location on z-axis

**Usage**

`find_grid_z(grid_DT, z_loc)`

---

`FSV_show`*FSV\_show*

---

## Description

Visualize spatial variable genes caculated by spatial\_DE

## Usage

```
FSV_show(  
  results,  
  ms_results = NULL,  
  size = c(4, 2, 1),  
  color = c("blue", "green", "red"),  
  sig_alpha = 0.5,  
  unsig_alpha = 0.5  
)
```

## Arguments

<code>results</code>	results caculated by spatial_DE
<code>ms_results</code>	ms_results caculated by spatial_DE
<code>size</code>	indicate different levels of qval
<code>color</code>	indicate different SV features
<code>sig_alpha</code>	transparency of significant genes
<code>unsig_alpha</code>	transparency of insignificant genes

## Details

Description of parameters.

## Value

ggplot object

## Examples

```
FSV_show(results)
```

---

get10Xmatrix	<i>get10Xmatrix</i>
--------------	---------------------

---

### Description

This function creates an expression matrix from a 10X structured folder

### Usage

```
get10Xmatrix(path_to_data, gene_column_index = 1)
```

### Arguments

path\_to\_data    path to the 10X folder  
 gene\_column\_index    which column from the features or genes .tsv file to use for row ids

### Details

A typical 10X folder is named raw\_feature\_bc\_matrix or raw\_feature\_bc\_matrix and it has 3 files:

- barcodes.tsv(.gz)
- features.tsv(.gz) or genes.tsv(.gz)
- matrix.mtx(.gz)

By default the first column of the features or genes .tsv file will be used, however if multiple annotations are provided (e.g. ensembl gene ids and gene symbols) the user can select another column.

### Value

sparse expression matrix from 10X

### Examples

```
get10Xmatrix(path_to_data)
```

---

getClusterSimilarity	<i>getClusterSimilarity</i>
----------------------	-----------------------------

---

### Description

Creates data.table with pairwise correlation scores between each cluster.

### Usage

```
getClusterSimilarity(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  cluster_column,  
  cor = c("pearson", "spearman")  
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	name of column to use for clusters
<code>cor</code>	correlation score to calculate distance

**Details**

Creates `data.table` with pairwise correlation scores between each cluster and the group size (# of cells) for each cluster. This information can be used together with `mergeClusters` to combine very similar or small clusters into bigger clusters.

**Value**

`data.table`

**Examples**

```
getClusterSimilarity(gobject)
```

---

<code>getDendrogramSplits</code>	<i>getDendrogramSplits</i>
----------------------------------	----------------------------

---

**Description**

Split dendrogram at each node and keep the leave (label) information..

**Usage**

```
getDendrogramSplits(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  cor = c("pearson", "spearman"),
  distance = "ward.D",
  h = NULL,
  h_color = "red",
  show_dend = TRUE,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	name of column to use for clusters
<code>cor</code>	correlation score to calculate distance

distance	distance method to use for hierarchical clustering
h	height of horizontal lines to plot
h_color	color of horizontal lines
show_dend	show dendrogram
verbose	be verbose

### Details

Creates a data.table with three columns and each row represents a node in the dendrogram. For each node the height of the node is given together with the two subdendrograms. This information can be used to determine in a hierarchical manner differentially expressed marker genes at each node.

### Value

data.table object

### Examples

```
getDendrogramSplits(gobject)
```

---

getDistinctColors	<i>getDistinctColors</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

---

### Description

Returns a number of distinct colors based on the RGB scale

### Usage

```
getDistinctColors(n)
```

### Arguments

n	number of colors wanted
---	-------------------------

### Value

number of distinct colors



---

getGiottoImage	<i>getGiottoImage</i>
----------------	-----------------------

---

**Description**

get get a giotto image from a giotto object

**Usage**

```
getGiottoImage(gobject, image_name)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
image_name	name of giotto image <a href="#">showGiottoImageNames</a>

**Value**

a giotto image

**Examples**

```
getGiottoImage(gobject)
```

---

get_os	<i>get_os</i>
--------	---------------

---

**Description**

return the type of operating system, see <https://conjugateprior.org/2015/06/identifying-the-os-from-r/>

**Usage**

```
get_os()
```

**Value**

character osx, linux or windows

---

giotto-class	<i>S4 giotto Class</i>
--------------	------------------------

---

### Description

Framework of giotto object to store and work with spatial expression data

### Slots

raw\_exprs raw expression counts  
 norm\_expr normalized expression counts  
 norm\_scaled\_expr normalized and scaled expression counts  
 custom\_expr custom normalized counts  
 spatial\_locs spatial location coordinates for cells  
 cell\_metadata metadata for cells  
 gene\_metadata metadata for genes  
 cell\_ID unique cell IDs  
 gene\_ID unique gene IDs  
 spatial\_network spatial network in data.table/data.frame format  
 spatial\_grid spatial grid in data.table/data.frame format  
 spatial\_enrichment slot to save spatial enrichment-like results  
 dimension\_reduction slot to save dimension reduction coordinates  
 nn\_network nearest neighbor network in igraph format  
 images slot to store giotto images  
 parameters slot to save parameters that have been used  
 instructions slot for global function instructions  
 offset\_file offset file used to stitch together image fields  
 OS\_platform Operating System to run Giotto analysis on

---

heatmSpatialCorGenes	<i>heatmSpatialCorGenes</i>
----------------------	-----------------------------

---

### Description

Create heatmap of spatially correlated genes

**Usage**

```

heatmSpatialCorGenes(
  gobject,
  spatCorObject,
  use_clus_name = NULL,
  show_cluster_annot = TRUE,
  show_row_dend = T,
  show_column_dend = F,
  show_row_names = F,
  show_column_names = F,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "heatmSpatialCorGenes",
  ...
)

```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>spatCorObject</code>	spatial correlation object
<code>use_clus_name</code>	name of clusters to visualize (from <code>clusterSpatialCorGenes()</code> )
<code>show_cluster_annot</code>	show cluster annotation on top of heatmap
<code>show_row_dend</code>	show row dendrogram
<code>show_column_dend</code>	show column dendrogram
<code>show_row_names</code>	show row names
<code>show_column_names</code>	show column names
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>...</code>	additional parameters to the <a href="#">Heatmap</a> function from <code>ComplexHeatmap</code>

**Value**

Heatmap generated by `ComplexHeatmap`

**Examples**

```
heatmSpatialCorGenes(gobject)
```

---

hyperGeometricEnrich    *hyperGeometricEnrich*


---

## Description

Function to calculate gene signature enrichment scores per spatial position using a hypergeometric test.

## Usage

```
hyperGeometricEnrich(
  gobject,
  sign_matrix,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reverse_log_scale = TRUE,
  logbase = 2,
  top_percentage = 5,
  output_enrichment = c("original", "zscore")
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	Giotto object
<code>sign_matrix</code>	Matrix of signature genes for each cell type / process
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>reverse_log_scale</code>	reverse expression values from log scale
<code>logbase</code>	log base to use if <code>reverse_log_scale = TRUE</code>
<code>top_percentage</code>	percentage of cells that will be considered to have gene expression with matrix binarization
<code>output_enrichment</code>	how to return enrichment output

## Details

The enrichment score is calculated based on the p-value from the hypergeometric test,  $-\log_{10}(\text{p-value})$ .

## Value

data.table with enrichment results

## Examples

```
hyperGeometricEnrich(gobject)
```

---

```
insertCrossSectionGenePlot3D
      insertCrossSectionGenePlot3D
```

---

## Description

Visualize cells and gene expression in a virtual cross section according to spatial coordinates

## Usage

```
insertCrossSectionGenePlot3D(
  gobject,
  crossSection_obj = NULL,
  name = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  mesh_grid_color = "#1f77b4",
  mesh_grid_width = 3,
  mesh_grid_style = "dot",
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  sdimz = "sdimz",
  show_other_cells = F,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "spatGenePlot3D_with_cross_section",
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name of virtual cross section to use
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>mesh_grid_color</code>	color for the meshgrid lines
<code>mesh_grid_width</code>	width for the meshgrid lines
<code>mesh_grid_style</code>	style for the meshgrid lines
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>sdimz</code>	z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells

axis_scale	axis_scale
custom_ratio	custom_ratio
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
...	parameters for spatGenePlot3D

### Details

Description of parameters.

### Value

ggplot

### Examples

```
insertCrossSectionGenePlot3D(gobject)
```

---

```
insertCrossSectionSpatPlot3D
      insertCrossSectionSpatPlot3D
```

---

### Description

Visualize the meshgrid lines of cross section together with cells

### Usage

```
insertCrossSectionSpatPlot3D(
  gobject,
  crossSection_obj = NULL,
  name = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  mesh_grid_color = "#1f77b4",
  mesh_grid_width = 3,
  mesh_grid_style = "dot",
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  sdimz = "sdimz",
  show_other_cells = F,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  default_save_name = "spat3D_with_cross_section",
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name of virtual cross section to use
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>mesh_grid_color</code>	color for the meshgrid lines
<code>mesh_grid_width</code>	width for the meshgrid lines
<code>mesh_grid_style</code>	style for the meshgrid lines
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>sdimz</code>	z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>axis_scale</code>	axis_scale
<code>custom_ratio</code>	custom_ratio
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
<code>...</code>	parameters for spatPlot3D

**Details**

Description of parameters.

**Value**

ggplot

**Examples**

```
insertCrossSectionSpatPlot3D(gobject)
```

---

jackstrawPlot

*jackstrawPlot*


---

**Description**

identify significant principal components (PCs)

**Usage**

```
jackstrawPlot(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reduction = c("cells", "genes"),
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  center = FALSE,
  scale_unit = FALSE,
  ncp = 20,
  ylim = c(0, 1),
  iter = 10,
  threshold = 0.01,
  verbose = T,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "jackstrawPlot"
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>reduction</code>	cells or genes
<code>genes_to_use</code>	subset of genes to use for PCA
<code>center</code>	center data before PCA
<code>scale_unit</code>	scale features before PCA
<code>ncp</code>	number of principal components to calculate
<code>ylim</code>	y-axis limits on jackstraw plot
<code>iter</code>	number of iterations for jackstraw
<code>threshold</code>	p-value threshold to call a PC significant
<code>verbose</code>	show progress of jackstraw method
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

**Details**

The Jackstraw method uses the [permutationPA](#) function. By systematically permuting genes it identifies robust, and thus significant, PCs.



**Value**

ggplot object for jackstraw method

**Examples**

```
jackstrawPlot(gobject)
```

---

kmeans_binarize	<i>kmeans_binarize</i>
-----------------	------------------------

---

**Description**

create binarized scores from a vector using kmeans

**Usage**

```
kmeans_binarize(x, nstart = 3, iter.max = 10)
```

---

loadHMRF	<i>loadHMRF</i>
----------	-----------------

---

**Description**

load previous HMRF

**Usage**

```
loadHMRF(  
  name_used = "test",  
  output_folder_used,  
  k_used = 10,  
  betas_used,  
  python_path_used  
)
```

**Arguments**

name_used	name of HMRF that was run
output_folder_used	output folder that was used
k_used	number of HMRF domains that was tested
betas_used	betas that were tested
python_path_used	python path that was used

**Details**

Description of HMRF parameters ...

**Value**

reloads a previous ran HMRF from doHRMF

**Examples**

```
loadHMRF(gobject)
```

---

makeSignMatrixPAGE	<i>makeSignMatrixPAGE</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

---

**Description**

Function to convert a list of signature genes (e.g. for cell types or processes) into a binary matrix format that can be used with the PAGE enrichment option. Each cell type or process should have a vector of cell-type or process specific genes. These vectors need to be combined into a list (sign\_list). The names of the cell types or processes that are provided in the list need to be given (sign\_names).

**Usage**

```
makeSignMatrixPAGE(sign_names, sign_list)
```

**Arguments**

sign_names	vector with names for each provided gene signature
sign_list	list of genes (signature)

**Value**

matrix

**See Also**

[PAGEEnrich](#)

**Examples**

```
makeSignMatrixPAGE()
```

---

makeSignMatrixRank	<i>makeSignMatrixRank</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

---

**Description**

Function to convert a single-cell count matrix and a corresponding single-cell cluster vector into a rank matrix that can be used with the Rank enrichment option.

**Usage**

```
makeSignMatrixRank(sc_matrix, sc_cluster_ids, gobject = NULL)
```

**Arguments**

sc_matrix	matrix of single-cell RNAseq expression data
sc_cluster_ids	vector of cluster ids
gobject	if giotto object is given then only genes present in both datasets will be considered

**Value**

matrix

**See Also**

[rankEnrich](#)

**Examples**

```
makeSignMatrixRank()
```

---

make_simulated_network	<i>make_simulated_network</i>
------------------------	-------------------------------

---

**Description**

Simulate random network.

**Usage**

```
make_simulated_network(  
  gobject,  
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",  
  cluster_column,  
  number_of_simulations = 100  
)
```

**Examples**

```
make_simulated_network(gobject)
```

---

mergeClusters	<i>mergeClusters</i>
---------------	----------------------

---

## Description

Merge selected clusters based on pairwise correlation scores and size of cluster.

## Usage

```
mergeClusters(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  cor = c("pearson", "spearman"),
  new_cluster_name = "merged_cluster",
  min_cor_score = 0.8,
  max_group_size = 20,
  force_min_group_size = 10,
  max_sim_clusters = 10,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

## Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
cluster_column	name of column to use for clusters
cor	correlation score to calculate distance
new_cluster_name	new name for merged clusters
min_cor_score	min correlation score to merge pairwise clusters
max_group_size	max cluster size that can be merged
force_min_group_size	size of clusters that will be merged with their most similar neighbor(s)
max_sim_clusters	maximum number of clusters to potentially merge to reach force_min_group_size
return_gobject	return giotto object
verbose	be verbose

## Details

Merge selected clusters based on pairwise correlation scores and size of cluster. To avoid large clusters to merge the `max_group_size` can be lowered. Small clusters can be forcibly merged with their most similar pairwise cluster by adjusting the `force_min_group_size` parameter. Clusters smaller than this value will be merged independent on the provided `min_cor_score` value. The `force_min_group_size` might not always be reached if clusters have already been merged before. A giotto object is returned by default, if FALSE then the merging vector will be returned.

**Value**

Giotto object

**Examples**

```
mergeClusters(gobject)
```

---

my\_rownMeans

*my\_rownMeans*

---

**Description**

arithmetic rowMeans that works for a single column

**Usage**

```
my_rownMeans(x)
```

**Examples**

```
my_rownMeans(x)
```

---

my\_growMeans

*my\_growMeans*

---

**Description**

geometric rowMeans that works for a single column

**Usage**

```
my_growMeans(x, offset = 0.1)
```

**Examples**

```
my_growMeans(x)
```

---

my\_rowMeans

*my\_rowMeans*

---

**Description**

arithmetic or geometric rowMeans that works for a single column

**Usage**

```
my_rowMeans(x, method = c("arithmetic", "geometric"), offset = 0.1)
```

**Examples**

```
my_rowMeans(x)
```

---

nnDT\_to\_kNN

*nnDT\_to\_kNN*


---

**Description**

Convert a nearest network data.table to a kNN object

**Usage**

```
nnDT_to_kNN(nnDT)
```

**Arguments**

nnDT                      nearest neighbor network in data.table format

**Value**

kNN object

---

node\_clusters

*node\_clusters*


---

**Description**

Merge selected clusters based on pairwise correlation scores and size of cluster.

**Usage**

```
node_clusters(hclus_obj, verbose = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

hclus\_obj                  hclus object  
 verbose                   be verbose

**Value**

list of splitted dendrogram nodes from high to low node height

**Examples**

```
node_clusters(hclus_obj)
```

---

normalizeGiotto	<i>normalizeGiotto</i>
-----------------	------------------------

---

## Description

fast normalize and/or scale expression values of Giotto object

## Usage

```
normalizeGiotto(
  gobject,
  norm_methods = c("standard", "osmFISH"),
  library_size_norm = TRUE,
  scalefactor = 6000,
  log_norm = TRUE,
  log_offset = 1,
  logbase = 2,
  scale_genes = T,
  scale_cells = T,
  scale_order = c("first_genes", "first_cells"),
  verbose = F
)
```

## Arguments

gobject	giotto object
norm_methods	normalization method to use
library_size_norm	normalize cells by library size
scalefactor	scale factor to use after library size normalization
log_norm	transform values to log-scale
log_offset	offset value to add to expression matrix, default = 1
logbase	log base to use to log normalize expression values
scale_genes	z-score genes over all cells
scale_cells	z-score cells over all genes
scale_order	order to scale genes and cells
verbose	be verbose

## Details

Currently there are two 'methods' to normalize your raw counts data.

A. The standard method follows the standard protocol which can be adjusted using the provided parameters and follows the following order:

- 1. Data normalization for total library size and scaling by a custom scale-factor.
- 2. Log transformation of data.
- 3. Z-scoring of data by genes and/or cells.

B. The normalization method as provided by the osmFISH paper is also implemented:

- 1. First normalize genes, for each gene divide the counts by the total gene count and multiply by the total number of genes.
- 2. Next normalize cells, for each cell divide the normalized gene counts by the total counts per cell and multiply by the total number of cells.

This data will be saved in the Giotto slot for custom expression.

**Value**

giotto object

**Examples**

```
normalizeGiotto(gobject)
```

---

PAGEEnrich	<i>PAGEEnrich</i>
------------	-------------------

---

**Description**

Function to calculate gene signature enrichment scores per spatial position using PAGE.

**Usage**

```
PAGEEnrich(  
  gobject,  
  sign_matrix,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  reverse_log_scale = TRUE,  
  logbase = 2,  
  output_enrichment = c("original", "zscore")  
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	Giotto object
sign_matrix	Matrix of signature genes for each cell type / process
expression_values	expression values to use
reverse_log_scale	reverse expression values from log scale
logbase	log base to use if reverse_log_scale = TRUE
output_enrichment	how to return enrichment output



**Details**

sign\_matrix: a binary matrix with genes as row names and cell-types as column names. Alternatively a list of signature genes can be provided to makeSignMatrixPAGE, which will create the matrix for you.

The enrichment Z score is calculated by using method (PAGE) from Kim SY et al., BMC bioinformatics, 2005 as  $Z = ((Sm \mu) * m^{1/2}) / \delta$ . For each gene in each spot, mu is the fold change values versus the mean expression and delta is the standard deviation. Sm is the mean fold change value of a specific marker gene set and m is the size of a given marker gene set.

**Value**

data.table with enrichment results

**See Also**

[makeSignMatrixPAGE](#)

**Examples**

```
PAGEEnrich(gobject)
```

---

pca_giotto	<i>pca_giotto</i>
------------	-------------------

---

**Description**

performs PCA based on Rfast

**Usage**

```
pca_giotto(mymatrix, center = T, scale = T, k = 50)
```

**Arguments**

mymatrix	matrix or object that can be converted to matrix
center	center data
scale	scale features
k	number of principal components to calculate

**Value**

list of eigenvalues, eigenvectors and pca coordinates

---

pDataDT	<i>pDataDT</i>
---------	----------------

---

**Description**

show cell metadata

**Usage**

pDataDT(gobject)

**Arguments**

gobject                  giotto object

**Value**

data.table with cell metadata

**Examples**

pDataDT(gobject)

---

plotCCcomDotplot	<i>plotCCcomDotplot</i>
------------------	-------------------------

---

**Description**

Plots dotplot for ligand-receptor communication scores in cell-cell interactions

**Usage**

```
plotCCcomDotplot(  
  gobject,  
  comScores,  
  selected_LR = NULL,  
  selected_cell_LR = NULL,  
  show_LR_names = TRUE,  
  show_cell_LR_names = TRUE,  
  cluster_on = c("PI", "LR_expr", "log2fc"),  
  cor_method = c("pearson", "kendall", "spearman"),  
  aggl_method = c("ward.D", "ward.D2", "single", "complete", "average", "mcquitty",  
    "median", "centroid"),  
  show_plot = NA,  
  return_plot = NA,  
  save_plot = NA,  
  save_param = list(),  
  default_save_name = "plotCCcomDotplot"  
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>comScores</code>	communication scores from <a href="#">exprCellCellcom</a> or <a href="#">spatCellCellcom</a>
<code>selected_LR</code>	selected ligand-receptor combinations
<code>selected_cell_LR</code>	selected cell-cell combinations for ligand-receptor combinations
<code>show_LR_names</code>	show ligand-receptor names
<code>show_cell_LR_names</code>	show cell-cell names
<code>cluster_on</code>	values to use for clustering of cell-cell and ligand-receptor pairs
<code>cor_method</code>	correlation method used for clustering
<code>aggl_method</code>	agglomeration method used by hclust
<code>show_plot</code>	show plots
<code>return_plot</code>	return plotting object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>show</code>	values to show on heatmap

**Value**

ggplot

**Examples**

```
plotCCcomDotplot(CPGscores)
```

---

<code>plotCCcomHeatmap</code>	<i>plotCCcomHeatmap</i>
-------------------------------	-------------------------

---

**Description**

Plots heatmap for ligand-receptor communication scores in cell-cell interactions

**Usage**

```
plotCCcomHeatmap(
  gobject,
  comScores,
  selected_LR = NULL,
  selected_cell_LR = NULL,
  show_LR_names = TRUE,
  show_cell_LR_names = TRUE,
  show = c("PI", "LR_expr", "log2fc"),
  cor_method = c("pearson", "kendall", "spearman"),
  aggl_method = c("ward.D", "ward.D2", "single", "complete", "average", "mcquitty"),
```

```

    "median", "centroid"),
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotCCcomHeatmap"
)

```

### Arguments

gobject	giotto object
comScores	communication scores from <a href="#">exprCellCellcom</a> or <a href="#">spatCellCellcom</a>
selected_LR	selected ligand-receptor combinations
selected_cell_LR	selected cell-cell combinations for ligand-receptor combinations
show_LR_names	show ligand-receptor names
show_cell_LR_names	show cell-cell names
show	values to show on heatmap
cor_method	correlation method used for clustering
aggl_method	agglomeration method used by hclust
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return plotting object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

### Value

ggplot

### Examples

```
plotCCcomHeatmap(CPGscores)
```

---

plotCellProximityGenes

*plotCellProximityGenes*

---

### Description

Create visualization for cell proximity gene scores

**Usage**

```

plotCellProximityGenes(
  gobject,
  cpqObject,
  method = c("volcano", "cell_barplot", "cell-cell", "cell_sankey", "heatmap",
    "dotplot"),
  min_cells = 4,
  min_cells_expr = 1,
  min_int_cells = 4,
  min_int_cells_expr = 1,
  min_fdr = 0.1,
  min_spat_diff = 0.2,
  min_log2_fc = 0.2,
  min_zscore = 2,
  zscores_column = c("cell_type", "genes"),
  direction = c("both", "up", "down"),
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotCellProximityGenes"
)

```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
cpqObject	cell proximity gene score object
method	plotting method to use
min_cells	minimum number of source cell type
min_cells_expr	minimum expression level for source cell type
min_int_cells	minimum number of interacting neighbor cell type
min_int_cells_expr	minimum expression level for interacting neighbor cell type
min_fdr	minimum adjusted p-value
min_spat_diff	minimum absolute spatial expression difference
min_log2_fc	minimum log2 fold-change
min_zscore	minimum z-score change
zscores_column	calculate z-scores over cell types or genes
direction	differential expression directions to keep
cell_color_code	vector of colors with cell types as names
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return plotting object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

**Value**

plot

**Examples**

```
plotCellProximityGenes(CPGscores)
```

---

plotCombineCCcom

*plotCombineCCcom*


---

**Description**

Create visualization for combined (pairwise) cell proximity gene scores

**Usage**

```
plotCombineCCcom(
  gobject,
  combCCcom,
  selected_LR = NULL,
  selected_cell_LR = NULL,
  detail_plot = T,
  simple_plot = F,
  simple_plot_facet = c("interaction", "genes"),
  facet_scales = "fixed",
  facet_ncol = length(selected_LR),
  facet_nrow = length(selected_cell_LR),
  colors = c("#9932CC", "#FF8C00"),
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotCombineCCcom"
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
combCCcom	combined communication scores, output from combCCcom()
selected_LR	selected ligand-receptor pair
selected_cell_LR	selected cell-cell interaction pair for ligand-receptor pair
detail_plot	show detailed info in both interacting cell types
simple_plot	show a simplified plot
simple_plot_facet	facet on interactions or genes with simple plot
facet_scales	ggplot facet scales paramter
facet_ncol	ggplot facet ncol parameter

facet_nrow	ggplot facet nrow parameter
colors	vector with two colors to use
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return plotting object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

**Value**

ggplot

**Examples**

```
plotCombineCCcom(CPGscores)
```

---

```
plotCombineCellCellCommunication
```

*plotCombineCellCellCommunication*

---

**Description**

Create visualization for combined (pairwise) cell proximity gene scores

**Usage**

```
plotCombineCellCellCommunication(
  gobject,
  combCCcom,
  selected_LR = NULL,
  selected_cell_LR = NULL,
  detail_plot = T,
  simple_plot = F,
  simple_plot_facet = c("interaction", "genes"),
  facet_scales = "fixed",
  facet_ncol = length(selected_LR),
  facet_nrow = length(selected_cell_LR),
  colors = c("#9932CC", "#FF8C00"),
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotCombineCellCellCommunication"
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>combCCcom</code>	combined communication scores, output from <code>combCCcom()</code>
<code>selected_LR</code>	selected ligand-receptor pair
<code>selected_cell_LR</code>	selected cell-cell interaction pair for ligand-receptor pair
<code>detail_plot</code>	show detailed info in both interacting cell types
<code>simple_plot</code>	show a simplified plot
<code>simple_plot_facet</code>	facet on interactions or genes with simple plot
<code>facet_scales</code>	ggplot facet scales parameter
<code>facet_ncol</code>	ggplot facet ncol parameter
<code>facet_nrow</code>	ggplot facet nrow parameter
<code>colors</code>	vector with two colors to use
<code>show_plot</code>	show plots
<code>return_plot</code>	return plotting object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

**Value**

ggplot

**Examples**

```
plotCombineCellCellCommunication(CPGscores)
```

---

```
plotCombineCellProximityGenes
```

```
plotCombineCellProximityGenes
```

---

**Description**

Create visualization for combined (pairwise) cell proximity gene scores

**Usage**

```
plotCombineCellProximityGenes(
  gobject,
  combCpgObject,
  selected_interactions = NULL,
  selected_gene_to_gene = NULL,
  detail_plot = T,
  simple_plot = F,
```



```

    simple_plot_facet = c("interaction", "genes"),
    facet_scales = "fixed",
    facet_ncol = length(selected_gene_to_gene),
    facet_nrow = length(selected_interactions),
    colors = c("#9932CC", "#FF8C00"),
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "plotCombineCPG"
  )

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>combCpgObject</code>	CPGscores, output from <code>combineCellProximityGenes()</code>
<code>selected_interactions</code>	interactions to show
<code>selected_gene_to_gene</code>	pairwise gene combinations to show
<code>detail_plot</code>	show detailed info in both interacting cell types
<code>simple_plot</code>	show a simplified plot
<code>simple_plot_facet</code>	facet on interactions or genes with simple plot
<code>facet_scales</code>	ggplot facet scales paramter
<code>facet_ncol</code>	ggplot facet ncol parameter
<code>facet_nrow</code>	ggplot facet nrow parameter
<code>colors</code>	vector with two colors to use
<code>show_plot</code>	show plots
<code>return_plot</code>	return plotting object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

### Value

ggplot

### Examples

```
plotCombineCellProximityGenes(CPGscores)
```

plotCombineCPG

*plotCombineCPG***Description**

Create visualization for combined (pairwise) cell proximity gene scores

**Usage**

```
plotCombineCPG(
  gobject,
  combCpgObject,
  selected_interactions = NULL,
  selected_gene_to_gene = NULL,
  detail_plot = T,
  simple_plot = F,
  simple_plot_facet = c("interaction", "genes"),
  facet_scales = "fixed",
  facet_ncol = length(selected_gene_to_gene),
  facet_nrow = length(selected_interactions),
  colors = c("#9932CC", "#FF8C00"),
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotCombineCPG"
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>combCpgObject</code>	CPGscores, output from <code>combineCellProximityGenes()</code>
<code>selected_interactions</code>	interactions to show
<code>selected_gene_to_gene</code>	pairwise gene combinations to show
<code>detail_plot</code>	show detailed info in both interacting cell types
<code>simple_plot</code>	show a simplified plot
<code>simple_plot_facet</code>	facet on interactions or genes with simple plot
<code>facet_scales</code>	ggplot facet scales paramter
<code>facet_ncol</code>	ggplot facet ncol parameter
<code>facet_nrow</code>	ggplot facet nrow parameter
<code>colors</code>	vector with two colors to use
<code>show_plot</code>	show plots
<code>return_plot</code>	return plotting object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

**Value**

ggplot

**Examples**

```
plotCombineCPG(CPGscores)
```

---

plotCPG	<i>plotCPG</i>
---------	----------------

---

**Description**

Create visualization for cell proximity gene scores

**Usage**

```
plotCPG(
  gobject,
  cpgObject,
  method = c("volcano", "cell_barplot", "cell-cell", "cell_sankey", "heatmap",
    "dotplot"),
  min_cells = 5,
  min_cells_expr = 1,
  min_int_cells = 3,
  min_int_cells_expr = 1,
  min_fdr = 0.05,
  min_spat_diff = 0.2,
  min_log2_fc = 0.2,
  min_zscore = 2,
  zscores_column = c("cell_type", "genes"),
  direction = c("both", "up", "down"),
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotCPG"
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>cpgObject</code>	cell proximity gene score object
<code>method</code>	plotting method to use
<code>min_cells</code>	minimum number of source cell type
<code>min_cells_expr</code>	minimum expression level for source cell type
<code>min_int_cells</code>	minimum number of interacting neighbor cell type
<code>min_int_cells_expr</code>	minimum expression level for interacting neighbor cell type

min_fdr	minimum adjusted p-value
min_spat_diff	minimum absolute spatial expression difference
min_log2_fc	minimum log2 fold-change
min_zscore	minimum z-score change
zscores_column	calculate z-scores over cell types or genes
direction	differential expression directions to keep
cell_color_code	vector of colors with cell types as names
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return plotting object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

**Value**

plot

**Examples**

```
plotCPG(CPGscores)
```

---

plotGiottoImage	<i>plotGiottoImage</i>
-----------------	------------------------

---

**Description**

get plot a giotto image from a giotto object

**Usage**

```
plotGiottoImage(gobject, image_name)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
image_name	name of giotto image <a href="#">showGiottoImageNames</a>

**Value**

plot

**Examples**

```
plotGiottoImage(gobject)
```

---

plotHeatmap

*plotHeatmap*


---

## Description

Creates heatmap for genes and clusters.

## Usage

```
plotHeatmap(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  cluster_order = c("size", "correlation", "custom"),
  cluster_custom_order = NULL,
  cluster_color_code = NULL,
  cluster_cor_method = "pearson",
  cluster_hclust_method = "ward.D",
  gene_order = c("correlation", "custom"),
  gene_custom_order = NULL,
  gene_cor_method = "pearson",
  gene_hclust_method = "complete",
  show_values = c("rescaled", "z-scaled", "original"),
  size_vertical_lines = 1.1,
  gradient_colors = c("blue", "yellow", "red"),
  gene_label_selection = NULL,
  axis_text_y_size = NULL,
  legend_nrows = 1,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotHeatmap"
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	name of column to use for clusters
<code>cluster_order</code>	method to determine cluster order
<code>cluster_custom_order</code>	custom order for clusters
<code>cluster_color_code</code>	color code for clusters
<code>cluster_cor_method</code>	method for cluster correlation

cluster_hclust_method	method for hierarchical clustering of clusters
gene_order	method to determine gene order
gene_custom_order	custom order for genes
gene_cor_method	method for gene correlation
gene_hclust_method	method for hierarchical clustering of genes
show_values	which values to show on heatmap
size_vertical_lines	sizes for vertical lines
gradient_colors	colors for heatmap gradient
gene_label_selection	subset of genes to show on y-axis
axis_text_y_size	size for y-axis text
legend_nrows	number of rows for the cluster legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>
default_save_name	default save name

## Details

If you want to display many genes there are 2 ways to proceed:

- 1. set axis\_text\_y\_size to a really small value and show all genes
- 2. provide a subset of genes to display to gene\_label\_selection

## Value

ggplot

## Examples

```
## Not run:
plotHeatmap(gobject)

## End(Not run)
```

---

plotICG

*plotICG*


---

## Description

Create barplot to visualize interaction changed genes

## Usage

```
plotICG(
  gobject,
  cpgObject,
  source_type,
  source_markers,
  ICG_genes,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotICG"
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>cpgObject</code>	cell proximity gene score object
<code>source_type</code>	cell type of the source cell
<code>source_markers</code>	markers for the source cell type
<code>ICG_genes</code>	named character vector of ICG genes
<code>cell_color_code</code>	cell color code for the interacting cell types
<code>show_plot</code>	show plots
<code>return_plot</code>	return plotting object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

## Value

plot

## Examples

```
plotICG(CPGscores)
```

---

```
plotInteractionChangedGenes
      plotInteractionChangedGenes
```

---

## Description

Create barplot to visualize interaction changed genes

## Usage

```
plotInteractionChangedGenes(
  gobject,
  cpgObject,
  source_type,
  source_markers,
  ICG_genes,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotInteractionChangedGenes"
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>cpgObject</code>	cell proximity gene score object
<code>source_type</code>	cell type of the source cell
<code>source_markers</code>	markers for the source cell type
<code>ICG_genes</code>	named character vector of ICG genes
<code>cell_color_code</code>	cell color code for the interacting cell types
<code>show_plot</code>	show plots
<code>return_plot</code>	return plotting object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

## Value

plot

## Examples

```
plotInteractionChangedGenes(CPGscores)
```



---

plotly\_axis\_scale\_2D    *plotly\_axis\_scale\_2D*


---

**Description**

adjust the axis scale in 3D plotly plot

**Usage**

```
plotly_axis_scale_2D(
  cell_locations,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  mode = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL
)
```

**Arguments**

cell_locations	spatial_loc in giotto object
sdimx	x axis of cell spatial location
sdimy	y axis of cell spatial location
mode	axis adjustment mode
custom_ratio	set the ratio artificially

**Value**

edges in spatial grid as data.table()

**Examples**

```
plotly_axis_scale_2D(gobject)
```

---

plotly\_axis\_scale\_3D    *plotly\_axis\_scale\_3D*


---

**Description**

adjust the axis scale in 3D plotly plot

**Usage**

```
plotly_axis_scale_3D(
  cell_locations,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  mode = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL
)
```

**Arguments**

- cell\_locations    spatial\_loc in giotto object
- sdimx            x axis of cell spatial location
- sdimy            y axis of cell spatial location
- sdimz            z axis of cell spatial location
- mode             axis adjustment mode
- custom\_ratio    set the ratio artificially

**Value**

edges in spatial grid as data.table()

**Examples**

```
plotly_axis_scale_3D(gobject)
```

---

plotly_grid	<i>plotly_grid</i>
-------------	--------------------

---

**Description**

provide grid segment to draw in plot\_ly()

**Usage**

```
plotly_grid(  
  spatial_grid,  
  x_start = "x_start",  
  y_start = "y_start",  
  x_end = "x_end",  
  y_end = "y_end"  
)
```

**Arguments**

- spatial\_grid    spatial\_grid in giotto object

**Value**

edges in spatial grid as data.table()

**Examples**

```
plotly_grid(gobject)
```

---

plotly_network	<i>plotly_network</i>
----------------	-----------------------

---

**Description**

provide network segment to draw in 3D plot\_ly()

**Usage**

```
plotly_network(
  network,
  x = "sdimx_begin",
  y = "sdimy_begin",
  z = "sdimz_begin",
  x_end = "sdimx_end",
  y_end = "sdimy_end",
  z_end = "sdimz_end"
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject                      network in giotto object

**Value**

edges in network as data.table()

**Examples**

```
plotly_network(gobject)
```

---

plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap	<i>plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap</i>
--------------------------	---------------------------------

---

**Description**

Creates heatmap for numeric cell metadata within aggregated clusters.

**Usage**

```
plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap(
  gobject,
  metadata_cols = NULL,
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  value_cols = NULL,
  first_meta_col = NULL,
  second_meta_col = NULL,
  show_values = c("zscores", "original", "zscores_rescaled"),
  custom_cluster_order = NULL,
```

```

clus_cor_method = "pearson",
clus_cluster_method = "complete",
custom_values_order = NULL,
values_cor_method = "pearson",
values_cluster_method = "complete",
midpoint = 0,
x_text_size = 8,
x_text_angle = 45,
y_text_size = 8,
strip_text_size = 8,
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap"
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>metadata_cols</code>	annotation columns found in <code>pDataDT(gobject)</code>
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	spatial enrichment results to include
<code>value_cols</code>	value columns to use
<code>first_meta_col</code>	if more than 1 metadata column, select the x-axis factor
<code>second_meta_col</code>	if more than 1 metadata column, select the facetting factor
<code>show_values</code>	which values to show on heatmap
<code>custom_cluster_order</code>	custom cluster order (default = NULL)
<code>clus_cor_method</code>	correlation method for clusters
<code>clus_cluster_method</code>	hierarchical cluster method for the clusters
<code>midpoint</code>	midpoint of <code>show_values</code>
<code>x_text_size</code>	size of x-axis text
<code>x_text_angle</code>	angle of x-axis text
<code>y_text_size</code>	size of y-axis text
<code>strip_text_size</code>	size of strip text
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>custom_gene_order</code>	custom gene order (default = NULL)

gene\_cor\_method  
correlation method for genes

gene\_cluster\_method  
hierarchical cluster method for the genes

### Details

Creates heatmap for the average values of selected value columns in the different annotation groups.

### Value

ggplot or data.table

### See Also

[plotMetaDataHeatmap](#) for gene expression instead of numeric cell annotation data.

### Examples

```
plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap(gobject)
```

---

plotMetaDataHeatmap	<i>plotMetaDataHeatmap</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

---

### Description

Creates heatmap for genes within aggregated clusters.

### Usage

```
plotMetaDataHeatmap(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  metadata_cols = NULL,
  selected_genes = NULL,
  first_meta_col = NULL,
  second_meta_col = NULL,
  show_values = c("zscores", "original", "zscores_rescaled"),
  custom_cluster_order = NULL,
  clus_cor_method = "pearson",
  clus_cluster_method = "complete",
  custom_gene_order = NULL,
  gene_cor_method = "pearson",
  gene_cluster_method = "complete",
  gradient_color = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = 0,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  x_text_size = 10,
  x_text_angle = 45,
  y_text_size = 10,
  strip_text_size = 8,
  show_plot = NA,
```

```

    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "plotMetaDataHeatmap"
)

```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>metadata_cols</code>	annotation columns found in <code>pDataDT(gobject)</code>
<code>selected_genes</code>	subset of genes to use
<code>first_meta_col</code>	if more than 1 metadata column, select the x-axis factor
<code>second_meta_col</code>	if more than 1 metadata column, select the facetting factor
<code>show_values</code>	which values to show on heatmap
<code>custom_cluster_order</code>	custom cluster order (default = NULL)
<code>clus_cor_method</code>	correlation method for clusters
<code>clus_cluster_method</code>	hierarchical cluster method for the clusters
<code>custom_gene_order</code>	custom gene order (default = NULL)
<code>gene_cor_method</code>	correlation method for genes
<code>gene_cluster_method</code>	hierarchical cluster method for the genes
<code>gradient_color</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>x_text_size</code>	size of x-axis text
<code>x_text_angle</code>	angle of x-axis text
<code>y_text_size</code>	size of y-axis text
<code>strip_text_size</code>	size of strip text
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name

**Details**

Creates heatmap for the average expression of selected genes in the different annotation/cluster groups. Calculation of cluster or gene order is done on the provided expression values, but visualization is by default on the z-scores. Other options are the original values or z-scores rescaled per gene (-1 to 1).

**Value**

ggplot or data.table

**See Also**

[plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap](#) for numeric cell annotation instead of gene expression.

**Examples**

```
plotMetaDataHeatmap(gobject)
```

---

plotPCA	<i>plotPCA</i>
---------	----------------

---

**Description**

Short wrapper for PCA visualization

**Usage**

```
plotPCA(gobject, dim_reduction_name = "pca", default_save_name = "PCA", ...)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	name of PCA
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name of PCA plot
<code>...</code>	Arguments passed on to <a href="#">dimPlot2D</a>
	<code>group_by_subset</code> subset the group_by factor column
	<code>dim1_to_use</code> dimension to use on x-axis
	<code>dim2_to_use</code> dimension to use on y-axis
	<code>spat_enr_names</code> names of spatial enrichment results to include
	<code>show_NN_network</code> show underlying NN network
	<code>nn_network_to_use</code> type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
	<code>network_name</code> name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
	<code>cell_color</code> color for cells (see details)
	<code>color_as_factor</code> convert color column to factor
	<code>cell_color_code</code> named vector with colors
	<code>cell_color_gradient</code> vector with 3 colors for numeric data
	<code>gradient_midpoint</code> midpoint for color gradient

`gradient_limits` vector with lower and upper limits  
`select_cell_groups` select subset of cells/clusters based on `cell_color` parameter  
`select_cells` select subset of cells based on cell IDs  
`show_other_cells` display not selected cells  
`other_cell_color` color of not selected cells  
`other_point_size` size of not selected cells  
`show_cluster_center` plot center of selected clusters  
`show_center_label` plot label of selected clusters  
`center_point_size` size of center points  
`label_size` size of labels  
`label_fontface` font of labels  
`edge_alpha` column to use for alpha of the edges  
`point_shape` point with border or not (border or no\_border)  
`point_size` size of point (cell)  
`point_alpha` transparency of point  
`point_border_col` color of border around points  
`point_border_stroke` stroke size of border around points  
`title` title for plot, defaults to `cell_color` parameter  
`show_legend` show legend  
`legend_text` size of legend text  
`legend_symbol_size` size of legend symbols  
`background_color` color of plot background  
`axis_text` size of axis text  
`axis_title` size of axis title  
`cow_n_col` cowplot param: how many columns  
`cow_rel_h` cowplot param: relative height  
`cow_rel_w` cowplot param: relative width  
`cow_align` cowplot param: how to align  
`show_plot` show plot  
`return_plot` return ggplot object  
`save_plot` directly save the plot [boolean]  
`save_param` list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)

## Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotPCA\\_3D](#)

## Value

ggplot

## See Also

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)



**Examples**

```
plotPCA(gobject)
```

---

plotPCA\_2D

*plotPCA\_2D*


---

**Description**

Short wrapper for PCA visualization

**Usage**

```
plotPCA_2D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  default_save_name = "PCA_2D",
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
dim_reduction_name	name of PCA
default_save_name	default save name of PCA plot
...	Arguments passed on to <a href="#">dimPlot2D</a>
group_by_subset	subset the group_by factor column
dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
spat_enr_names	names of spatial enrichment results to include
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
cell_color_gradient	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint	midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits	vector with lower and upper limits
select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	size of not selected cells
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters

`show_center_label` plot label of selected clusters  
`center_point_size` size of center points  
`label_size` size of labels  
`label_fontface` font of labels  
`edge_alpha` column to use for alpha of the edges  
`point_shape` point with border or not (border or no\_border)  
`point_size` size of point (cell)  
`point_alpha` transparency of point  
`point_border_col` color of border around points  
`point_border_stroke` stroke size of border around points  
`title` title for plot, defaults to `cell_color` parameter  
`show_legend` show legend  
`legend_text` size of legend text  
`legend_symbol_size` size of legend symbols  
`background_color` color of plot background  
`axis_text` size of axis text  
`axis_title` size of axis title  
`cow_n_col` cowplot param: how many columns  
`cow_rel_h` cowplot param: relative height  
`cow_rel_w` cowplot param: relative width  
`cow_align` cowplot param: how to align  
`show_plot` show plot  
`return_plot` return ggplot object  
`save_plot` directly save the plot [boolean]  
`save_param` list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)

## Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotPCA\\_3D](#)

## Value

ggplot

## See Also

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
plotPCA_2D(gobject)
```

plotPCA\_3D

*plotPCA\_3D***Description**

Visualize cells according to 3D PCA dimension reduction

**Usage**

```
plotPCA_3D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  default_save_name = "PCA_3D",
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
dim_reduction_name	name of PCA
default_save_name	default save name of PCA plot
...	Arguments passed on to <a href="#">dimPlot3D</a>
dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
dim3_to_use	dimension to use on z-axis
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	size of not selected cells
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points
label_size	size of labels
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_size	size of point (cell)
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>

**Details**

Description of parameters.

**Value**

plotly

**See Also**

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
plotPCA_3D(gobject)
```

---

<code>plotRankSpatvsExpr</code>	<i>plotRankSpatvsExpr</i>
---------------------------------	---------------------------

---

**Description**

Plots dotplot to compare ligand-receptor rankings from spatial and expression information

**Usage**

```
plotRankSpatvsExpr(  
  gobject,  
  combCC,  
  expr_rnk_column = "LR_expr_rnk",  
  spat_rnk_column = "LR_spat_rnk",  
  midpoint = 10,  
  size_range = c(0.01, 1.5),  
  xlims = NULL,  
  ylims = NULL,  
  selected_ranks = c(1, 10, 20),  
  show_plot = NA,  
  return_plot = NA,  
  save_plot = NA,  
  save_param = list(),  
  default_save_name = "plotRankSpatvsExpr"  
)
```

**Arguments**

- |                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code>gobject</code>         | giotto object  |
| <code>combCC</code>          | combined communication scores from <a href="#">combCCcom</a> |
| <code>expr_rnk_column</code> | column with expression rank information to use               |
| <code>spat_rnk_column</code> | column with spatial rank information to use                  |

midpoint	midpoint of colors
size_range	size ranges of dotplot
xlims	x-limits, numerical vector of 2
ylims	y-limits, numerical vector of 2
selected_ranks	numerical vector, will be used to print out the percentage of top spatial ranks are recovered
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return plotting object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

**Value**

ggplot

**Examples**

```
plotRankSpatvsExpr(CPGscores)
```

---

plotRecovery

---

*plotRecovery*


---

**Description**

Plots recovery plot to compare ligand-receptor rankings from spatial and expression information

**Usage**

```
plotRecovery(
  gobject,
  combCC,
  expr_rnk_column = "exprPI_rnk",
  spat_rnk_column = "spatPI_rnk",
  ground_truth = c("spatial", "expression"),
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotRecovery"
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
combCC	combined communication scores from <a href="#">combCCcom</a>
expr_rnk_column	column with expression rank information to use
spat_rnk_column	column with spatial rank information to use
ground_truth	what to consider as ground truth (default: spatial)
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return plotting object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Value

ggplot

Examples

plotRecovery(CPGscores)

---

plotRecovery_sub	<i>plotRecovery_sub</i>
------------------	-------------------------

---

Description

Plots recovery plot to compare ligand-receptor rankings from spatial and expression information

Usage

plotRecovery\_sub(combCC, first\_col = "LR\_expr\_rnk", second\_col = "LR\_spat\_rnk")

Arguments

combCC	combined communication scores from <a href="#">combCCcom</a>
first_col	first column to use
second_col	second column to use

Examples

plotRecovery\_sub(CPGscores)

---

```
plotStatDelaunayNetwork
      plotStatDelaunayNetwork
```

---

## Description

Plots network statistics for a Delaunay network..

## Usage

```
plotStatDelaunayNetwork(
  gobject,
  method = c("deldir", "delaunayn_geometry", "RTriangle"),
  dimensions = "all",
  maximum_distance = "auto",
  minimum_k = 0,
  options = "Pp",
  Y = TRUE,
  j = TRUE,
  S = 0,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotStatDelaunayNetwork",
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dimensions</code>	which spatial dimensions to use (maximum 2 dimensions)
<code>maximum_distance</code>	distance cutoff for Delaunay neighbors to consider
<code>minimum_k</code>	minimum neighbours if <code>maximum_distance</code> != NULL
<code>options</code>	(geometry) String containing extra control options for the underlying Qhull command; see the Qhull documentation ( <a href="http://doc/qhull/html/qdelaun.html">../doc/qhull/html/qdelaun.html</a> ) for the available options. (default = 'Pp', do not report precision problems)
<code>Y</code>	(RTriangle) If TRUE prohibits the insertion of Steiner points on the mesh boundary.
<code>j</code>	(RTriangle) If TRUE jettisons vertices that are not part of the final triangulation from the output.
<code>S</code>	(RTriangle) Specifies the maximum number of added Steiner points.
<code>show_plot</code>	show plots
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>

default\_save\_name            default save name for saving, don't change, change save\_name in save\_param  
...                          Other parameters of the [triangulate](#) function  
name                         name for spatial network (default = 'delaunay\_network')

**Details**

Plots statistics for a spatial Delaunay network as explained in [triangulate](#). This can be used to further finetune the [createSpatialDelaunayNetwork](#) function.

**Value**

giotto object with updated spatial network slot

**Examples**

plotStatDelaunayNetwork(gobject)

---

plotTSNE	<i>plotTSNE</i>
----------	-----------------

---

**Description**

Short wrapper for tSNE visualization

**Usage**

plotTSNE(gobject, dim\_reduction\_name = "tsne", default\_save\_name = "tSNE", ...)

**Arguments**

gobject                    giotto object  
dim\_reduction\_name        name of TSNE  
default\_save\_name         default save name of TSNE plot  
...                        Arguments passed on to [dimPlot2D](#)  
                            group\_by\_subset   subset the group\_by factor column  
                            dim1\_to\_use   dimension to use on x-axis  
                            dim2\_to\_use   dimension to use on y-axis  
                            spat\_enr\_names   names of spatial enrichment results to include  
                            show\_NN\_network   show underlying NN network  
                            nn\_network\_to\_use   type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)  
                            network\_name   name of NN network to use, if show\_NN\_network = TRUE  
                            cell\_color   color for cells (see details)  
                            color\_as\_factor   convert color column to factor  
                            cell\_color\_code   named vector with colors  
                            cell\_color\_gradient   vector with 3 colors for numeric data  
                            gradient\_midpoint   midpoint for color gradient



`gradient_limits` vector with lower and upper limits  
`select_cell_groups` select subset of cells/clusters based on `cell_color` parameter  
`select_cells` select subset of cells based on cell IDs  
`show_other_cells` display not selected cells  
`other_cell_color` color of not selected cells  
`other_point_size` size of not selected cells  
`show_cluster_center` plot center of selected clusters  
`show_center_label` plot label of selected clusters  
`center_point_size` size of center points  
`label_size` size of labels  
`label_fontface` font of labels  
`edge_alpha` column to use for alpha of the edges  
`point_shape` point with border or not (border or no\_border)  
`point_size` size of point (cell)  
`point_alpha` transparency of point  
`point_border_col` color of border around points  
`point_border_stroke` stroke size of border around points  
`title` title for plot, defaults to `cell_color` parameter  
`show_legend` show legend  
`legend_text` size of legend text  
`legend_symbol_size` size of legend symbols  
`background_color` color of plot background  
`axis_text` size of axis text  
`axis_title` size of axis title  
`cow_n_col` cowplot param: how many columns  
`cow_rel_h` cowplot param: relative height  
`cow_rel_w` cowplot param: relative width  
`cow_align` cowplot param: how to align  
`show_plot` show plot  
`return_plot` return ggplot object  
`save_plot` directly save the plot [boolean]  
`save_param` list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)

## Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotTSNE\\_3D](#)

## Value

ggplot

## See Also

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
plotTSNE(gobject)
```

---

plotTSNE\_2D

*plotTSNE\_2D*


---

**Description**

Short wrapper for tSNE visualization

**Usage**

```
plotTSNE_2D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_name = "tsne",
  default_save_name = "tSNE_2D",
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
dim_reduction_name	name of TSNE
default_save_name	default save name of TSNE plot
...	Arguments passed on to <a href="#">dimPlot2D</a>
group_by_subset	subset the group_by factor column
dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
spat_enr_names	names of spatial enrichment results to include
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
cell_color_gradient	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint	midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits	vector with lower and upper limits
select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	size of not selected cells
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters

show\_center\_label plot label of selected clusters  
 center\_point\_size size of center points  
 label\_size size of labels  
 label\_fontface font of labels  
 edge\_alpha column to use for alpha of the edges  
 point\_shape point with border or not (border or no\_border)  
 point\_size size of point (cell)  
 point\_alpha transparency of point  
 point\_border\_col color of border around points  
 point\_border\_stroke stroke size of border around points  
 title title for plot, defaults to cell\_color parameter  
 show\_legend show legend  
 legend\_text size of legend text  
 legend\_symbol\_size size of legend symbols  
 background\_color color of plot background  
 axis\_text size of axis text  
 axis\_title size of axis title  
 cow\_n\_col cowplot param: how many columns  
 cow\_rel\_h cowplot param: relative height  
 cow\_rel\_w cowplot param: relative width  
 cow\_align cowplot param: how to align  
 show\_plot show plot  
 return\_plot return ggplot object  
 save\_plot directly save the plot [boolean]  
 save\_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)

## Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotTSNE\\_3D](#)

## Value

ggplot

## See Also

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
plotTSNE_2D(gobject)
```

---

plotTSNE\_3D

*plotTSNE\_3D*


---

## Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

## Usage

```
plotTSNE_3D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_name = "tsne",
  default_save_name = "TSNE_3D",
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	name of TSNE
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name of TSNE plot
<code>...</code>	Arguments passed on to <a href="#">dimPlot3D</a>
	<code>dim1_to_use</code> dimension to use on x-axis
	<code>dim2_to_use</code> dimension to use on y-axis
	<code>dim3_to_use</code> dimension to use on z-axis
	<code>show_NN_network</code> show underlying NN network
	<code>nn_network_to_use</code> type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
	<code>network_name</code> name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
	<code>cell_color</code> color for cells (see details)
	<code>color_as_factor</code> convert color column to factor
	<code>cell_color_code</code> named vector with colors
	<code>select_cell_groups</code> select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
	<code>select_cells</code> select subset of cells based on cell IDs
	<code>show_other_cells</code> display not selected cells
	<code>other_cell_color</code> color of not selected cells
	<code>other_point_size</code> size of not selected cells
	<code>show_cluster_center</code> plot center of selected clusters
	<code>show_center_label</code> plot label of selected clusters
	<code>center_point_size</code> size of center points
	<code>label_size</code> size of labels
	<code>edge_alpha</code> column to use for alpha of the edges
	<code>point_size</code> size of point (cell)
	<code>show_plot</code> show plot
	<code>return_plot</code> return ggplot object
	<code>save_plot</code> directly save the plot [boolean]
	<code>save_param</code> list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>

**Details**

Description of parameters.

**Value**

plotly

**See Also**

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
plotTSNE_3D(gobject)
```

---

plotUMAP	<i>plotUMAP</i>
----------	-----------------

---

**Description**

Short wrapper for UMAP visualization

**Usage**

```
plotUMAP(gobject, dim_reduction_name = "umap", default_save_name = "UMAP", ...)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
dim_reduction_name	name of UMAP
default_save_name	default save name of UMAP plot
...	Arguments passed on to <a href="#">dimPlot2D</a>
group_by_subset	subset the group_by factor column
dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
spat_enr_names	names of spatial enrichment results to include
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
cell_color_gradient	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint	midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits	vector with lower and upper limits

`select_cell_groups` select subset of cells/clusters based on `cell_color` parameter  
`select_cells` select subset of cells based on cell IDs  
`show_other_cells` display not selected cells  
`other_cell_color` color of not selected cells  
`other_point_size` size of not selected cells  
`show_cluster_center` plot center of selected clusters  
`show_center_label` plot label of selected clusters  
`center_point_size` size of center points  
`label_size` size of labels  
`label_fontface` font of labels  
`edge_alpha` column to use for alpha of the edges  
`point_shape` point with border or not (border or no\_border)  
`point_size` size of point (cell)  
`point_alpha` transparency of point  
`point_border_col` color of border around points  
`point_border_stroke` stroke size of border around points  
`title` title for plot, defaults to `cell_color` parameter  
`show_legend` show legend  
`legend_text` size of legend text  
`legend_symbol_size` size of legend symbols  
`background_color` color of plot background  
`axis_text` size of axis text  
`axis_title` size of axis title  
`cow_n_col` cowplot param: how many columns  
`cow_rel_h` cowplot param: relative height  
`cow_rel_w` cowplot param: relative width  
`cow_align` cowplot param: how to align  
`show_plot` show plot  
`return_plot` return ggplot object  
`save_plot` directly save the plot [boolean]  
`save_param` list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)

## Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotUMAP\\_3D](#)

## Value

ggplot

## See Also

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_3D\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
plotUMAP(gobject)
```

---

plotUMAP\_2D

*plotUMAP\_2D*


---

## Description

Short wrapper for UMAP visualization

## Usage

```
plotUMAP_2D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  default_save_name = "UMAP_2D",
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	name of UMAP
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name of UMAP plot
<code>...</code>	Arguments passed on to <a href="#">dimPlot2D</a>
	<code>group_by_subset</code> subset the <code>group_by</code> factor column
	<code>dim1_to_use</code> dimension to use on x-axis
	<code>dim2_to_use</code> dimension to use on y-axis
	<code>spat_enr_names</code> names of spatial enrichment results to include
	<code>show_NN_network</code> show underlying NN network
	<code>nn_network_to_use</code> type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
	<code>network_name</code> name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
	<code>cell_color</code> color for cells (see details)
	<code>color_as_factor</code> convert color column to factor
	<code>cell_color_code</code> named vector with colors
	<code>cell_color_gradient</code> vector with 3 colors for numeric data
	<code>gradient_midpoint</code> midpoint for color gradient
	<code>gradient_limits</code> vector with lower and upper limits
	<code>select_cell_groups</code> select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
	<code>select_cells</code> select subset of cells based on cell IDs
	<code>show_other_cells</code> display not selected cells
	<code>other_cell_color</code> color of not selected cells
	<code>other_point_size</code> size of not selected cells
	<code>show_cluster_center</code> plot center of selected clusters
	<code>show_center_label</code> plot label of selected clusters
	<code>center_point_size</code> size of center points
	<code>label_size</code> size of labels

label\_fontface font of labels  
 edge\_alpha column to use for alpha of the edges  
 point\_shape point with border or not (border or no\_border)  
 point\_size size of point (cell)  
 point\_alpha transparency of point  
 point\_border\_col color of border around points  
 point\_border\_stroke stroke size of border around points  
 title title for plot, defaults to cell\_color parameter  
 show\_legend show legend  
 legend\_text size of legend text  
 legend\_symbol\_size size of legend symbols  
 background\_color color of plot background  
 axis\_text size of axis text  
 axis\_title size of axis title  
 cow\_n\_col cowplot param: how many columns  
 cow\_rel\_h cowplot param: relative height  
 cow\_rel\_w cowplot param: relative width  
 cow\_align cowplot param: how to align  
 show\_plot show plot  
 return\_plot return ggplot object  
 save\_plot directly save the plot [boolean]  
 save\_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)

## Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotUMAP\\_3D](#)

## Value

ggplot

## See Also

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
plotUMAP_2D(gobject)
```



---

plotUMAP\_3D

*plotUMAP\_3D*


---

## Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

## Usage

```
plotUMAP_3D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  default_save_name = "UMAP_3D",
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	name of UMAP
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name of UMAP plot
<code>...</code>	Arguments passed on to <a href="#">dimPlot3D</a>
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>other_point_size</code>	size of not selected cells
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters
<code>show_center_label</code>	plot label of selected clusters
<code>center_point_size</code>	size of center points
<code>label_size</code>	size of labels
<code>edge_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

See Also

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\\_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\\_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)

Examples

```
plotUMAP_3D(gobject)
```

---

<code>print.giotto</code>	<i>print method for giotto class</i>
---------------------------	--------------------------------------

---

Description

print method for giotto class. Prints the chosen number of genes (rows) and cells (columns) from the raw count matrix. Also print the spatial locations for the chosen number of cells.

Usage

```
print.giotto(object, ...)
```

Arguments

<code>nr_genes</code>	number of genes (rows) to print
<code>nr_cells</code>	number of cells (columns) to print

---

<code>rankEnrich</code>	<i>rankEnrich</i>
-------------------------	-------------------

---

Description

Function to calculate gene signature enrichment scores per spatial position using a rank based approach.

Usage

```
rankEnrich(  
  gobject,  
  sign_matrix,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  reverse_log_scale = TRUE,  
  logbase = 2,  
  output_enrichment = c("original", "zscore")  
)
```

**Arguments**

**gobject**                Giotto object  
**sign\_matrix**        Matrix of signature genes for each cell type / process  
**expression\_values**        expression values to use  
**reverse\_log\_scale**        reverse expression values from log scale  
**logbase**                log base to use if reverse\_log\_scale = TRUE  
**output\_enrichment**        how to return enrichment output

**Details**

**sign\_matrix**: a rank-fold matrix with genes as row names and cell-types as column names. Alternatively a scRNA-seq matrix and vector with clusters can be provided to `makeSignMatrixRank`, which will create the matrix for you.

First a new rank is calculated as  $R = (R1 * R2)^{1/2}$ , where R1 is the rank of fold-change for each gene in each spot and R2 is the rank of each marker in each cell type. The Rank-Biased Precision is then calculated as:  $RBP = (1 - 0.99) * (0.99)^{(R - 1)}$  and the final enrichment score is then calculated as the sum of top 100 RBPs.

**Value**

data.table with enrichment results

**See Also**

[makeSignMatrixRank](#)

**Examples**

```
rankEnrich(gobject)
```

---

rankSpatialCorGroups    *rankSpatialCorGroups*

---

**Description**

Rank spatial correlated clusters according to correlation structure

**Usage**

```
rankSpatialCorGroups(
  gobject,
  spatCorObject,
  use_clus_name = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = FALSE,
  save_plot = NA,
```

```
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "rankSpatialCorGroups"
)
```

**Arguments**

- gobject           giotto object
- spatCorObject    spatial correlation object
- use\_clus\_name    name of clusters to visualize (from clusterSpatialCorGenes())
- show\_plot        show plot
- return\_plot      return ggplot object
- save\_plot        directly save the plot [boolean]
- save\_param       list of saving parameters from [all\\_plots\\_save\\_function](#)
- default\_save\_name                    default save name for saving, don't change, change save\_name in save\_param

**Value**

data.table with positive (within group) and negative (outside group) scores

**Examples**

```
rankSpatialCorGroups(gobject)
```

---

rank_binarize	<i>rank_binarize</i>
---------------	----------------------

---

**Description**

create binarized scores from a vector using arbitrary rank

**Usage**

```
rank_binarize(x, max_rank = 200)
```

---

readExprMatrix	<i>readExprMatrix</i>
----------------	-----------------------

---

**Description**

Function to read an expression matrix into a sparse matrix.

**Usage**

```
readExprMatrix(path, cores = NA, transpose = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

path	path to the expression matrix
cores	number of cores to use
transpose	transpose matrix

**Details**

The expression matrix needs to have both unique column names and row names

**Value**

sparse matrix

**Examples**

```
readExprMatrix()
```

---

```
readGiottoInstructions
```

```
readGiottoInstructions
```

---

**Description**

Retrieves the instruction associated with the provided parameter

**Usage**

```
readGiottoInstructions(giotto_instructions, param = NULL)
```

**Arguments**

giotto_instructions	giotto object or result from createGiottoInstructions()
param	parameter to retrieve

**Value**

specific parameter

**Examples**

```
readGiottoInstructions()
```

---

removeCellAnnotation	<i>removeCellAnnotation</i>
----------------------	-----------------------------

---

**Description**

removes cell annotation of giotto object

**Usage**

```
removeCellAnnotation(gobject, columns = NULL, return_gobject = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
columns	names of columns to remove
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

**Details**

if return\_gobject = FALSE, it will return the cell metadata

**Value**

giotto object

**Examples**

```
removeCellAnnotation(gobject)
```

---

removeGeneAnnotation	<i>removeGeneAnnotation</i>
----------------------	-----------------------------

---

**Description**

removes gene annotation of giotto object

**Usage**

```
removeGeneAnnotation(gobject, columns = NULL, return_gobject = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
columns	names of columns to remove
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

**Details**

if return\_gobject = FALSE, it will return the gene metadata

**Value**

giotto object

**Examples**

```
removeGeneAnnotation(gobject)
```

---

```
replaceGiottoInstructions  
      replaceGiottoInstructions
```

---

**Description**

Function to replace all instructions from giotto object

**Usage**

```
replaceGiottoInstructions(gobject, instructions = NULL)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
instructions	new instructions (e.g. result from createGiottoInstructions)

**Value**

giotto object with replaces instructions

**Examples**

```
replaceGiottoInstructions()
```

---

runPCA	<i>runPCA</i>
--------	---------------

---

**Description**

runs a Principal Component Analysis

**Usage**

```
runPCA(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reduction = c("cells", "genes"),
  name = "pca",
  genes_to_use = "hvg",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  center = F,
  scale_unit = F,
  ncp = 100,
  method = c("irlba", "factominer"),
  rev = FALSE,
  verbose = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>reduction</code>	cells or genes
<code>name</code>	arbitrary name for PCA run
<code>genes_to_use</code>	subset of genes to use for PCA
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>center</code>	center data first (default = FALSE)
<code>scale_unit</code>	scale features before PCA (default = FALSE)
<code>ncp</code>	number of principal components to calculate
<code>method</code>	which implementation to use
<code>rev</code>	do a reverse PCA
<code>verbose</code>	verbosity of the function
<code>...</code>	additional parameters for PCA (see details)

**Details**

See [prcomp\\_irlba](#) and [PCA](#) for more information about other parameters.

- `genes_to_use = NULL`: will use all genes from the selected matrix
- `genes_to_use = <hvg name>`: can be used to select a column name of highly variable genes, created by (see [calculateHVG](#))
- `genes_to_use = c('geneA', 'geneB', ...)`: will use all manually provided genes

**Value**

giotto object with updated PCA dimension reduction



**Examples**

```
# 1. create giotto object
expr_path = system.file("extdata", "seqfish_field_expr.txt", package = 'Giotto')
loc_path = system.file("extdata", "seqfish_field_locs.txt", package = 'Giotto')
VC_small <- createGiottoObject(raw_exprs = expr_path, spatial_locs = loc_path)

# 2. normalize giotto
VC_small <- normalizeGiotto(gobject = VC_small, scalefactor = 6000)
VC_small <- addStatistics(gobject = VC_small)

# 3. dimension reduction
VC_small <- calculateHVG(gobject = VC_small)
VC_small <- runPCA(gobject = VC_small)
plotPCA(VC_small)
```

---

runPCA_factominer	<i>runPCA_factominer</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

---

**Description**

performs PCA based on the factominer package

**Usage**

```
runPCA_factominer(x, ncp = 100, scale = TRUE, rev = FALSE, ...)
```

**Arguments**

x	matrix or object that can be converted to matrix
ncp	number of principal components to calculate
scale	scale features
rev	reverse PCA

**Value**

list of eigenvalues, loadings and pca coordinates

---

runPCA_prcomp_irlba	<i>runPCA_prcomp_irlba</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

---

**Description**

performs PCA based on the irlba package

**Usage**

```
runPCA_prcomp_irlba(  
  x,  
  ncp = 100,  
  center = TRUE,  
  scale = TRUE,  
  rev = FALSE,  
  ...  
)
```

**Arguments**

x	matrix or object that can be converted to matrix
ncp	number of principal components to calculate
center	center data
scale	scale features
rev	reverse PCA

**Value**

list of eigenvalues, loadings and pca coordinates

---

runtSNE	<i>runtSNE</i>
---------	----------------

---

**Description**

run tSNE

**Usage**

```
runtSNE(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  reduction = c("cells", "genes"),  
  dim_reduction_to_use = "pca",  
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",  
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,  
  name = "tsne",  
  genes_to_use = NULL,  
  return_gobject = TRUE,  
  dims = 2,  
  perplexity = 30,  
  theta = 0.5,  
  do_PCA_first = F,  
  set_seed = T,  
  seed_number = 1234,  
  verbose = TRUE,  
  ...  
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>reduction</code>	cells or genes
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	use another dimension reduction set as input
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	name of dimension reduction set to use
<code>dimensions_to_use</code>	number of dimensions to use as input
<code>name</code>	arbitrary name for tSNE run
<code>genes_to_use</code>	if <code>dim_reduction_to_use = NULL</code> , which genes to use
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>dims</code>	tSNE param: number of dimensions to return
<code>perplexity</code>	tSNE param: perplexity
<code>theta</code>	tSNE param: theta
<code>do_PCA_first</code>	tSNE param: do PCA before tSNE (default = FALSE)
<code>set_seed</code>	use of seed
<code>seed_number</code>	seed number to use
<code>verbose</code>	verbosity of the function
<code>...</code>	additional tSNE parameters

## Details

See [Rtsne](#) for more information about these and other parameters.

- Input for tSNE dimension reduction can be another dimension reduction (default = 'pca')
- To use gene expression as input set `dim_reduction_to_use = NULL`
- If `dim_reduction_to_use = NULL`, `genes_to_use` can be used to select a column name of highly variable genes (see [calculateHVG](#)) or simply provide a vector of genes
- multiple tSNE results can be stored by changing the *name* of the analysis

## Value

giotto object with updated tSNE dimension reduction

## Examples

```
# 1. create giotto object
expr_path = system.file("extdata", "seqfish_field_expr.txt", package = 'Giotto')
loc_path = system.file("extdata", "seqfish_field_locs.txt", package = 'Giotto')
VC_small <- createGiottoObject(raw_exprs = expr_path, spatial_locs = loc_path)

# 2. normalize giotto
VC_small <- normalizeGiotto(gobject = VC_small, scalefactor = 6000)
VC_small <- addStatistics(gobject = VC_small)
```

```
# 3. dimension reduction
VC_small <- calculateHVG(gobject = VC_small)
VC_small <- runPCA(gobject = VC_small)
VC_small <- runTSNE(VC_small, dimensions_to_use = 1:5, n_threads = 2)
plotTSNE(gobject = VC_small)
```

---

runUMAP

*runUMAP*


---

## Description

run UMAP

## Usage

```
runUMAP(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reduction = c("cells", "genes"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "pca",
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
  name = "umap",
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  n_neighbors = 40,
  n_components = 2,
  n_epochs = 400,
  min_dist = 0.01,
  n_threads = 1,
  spread = 5,
  set_seed = T,
  seed_number = 1234,
  verbose = T,
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
reduction	cells or genes
dim_reduction_to_use	use another dimension reduction set as input
dim_reduction_name	name of dimension reduction set to use
dimensions_to_use	number of dimensions to use as input

name	arbitrary name for UMAP run
genes_to_use	if dim_reduction_to_use = NULL, which genes to use
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
n_neighbors	UMAP param: number of neighbors
n_components	UMAP param: number of components
n_epochs	UMAP param: number of epochs
min_dist	UMAP param: minimum distance
n_threads	UMAP param: threads to use
spread	UMAP param: spread
set_seed	use of seed
seed_number	seed number to use
verbose	verbosity of function
...	additional UMAP parameters

## Details

See [umap](#) for more information about these and other parameters.

- Input for UMAP dimension reduction can be another dimension reduction (default = 'pca')
- To use gene expression as input set dim\_reduction\_to\_use = NULL
- If dim\_reduction\_to\_use = NULL, genes\_to\_use can be used to select a column name of highly variable genes (see [calculateHVG](#)) or simply provide a vector of genes
- multiple UMAP results can be stored by changing the *name* of the analysis

## Value

giotto object with updated UMAP dimension reduction

## Examples

```
# 1. create giotto object
expr_path = system.file("extdata", "seqfish_field_expr.txt", package = 'Giotto')
loc_path = system.file("extdata", "seqfish_field_locs.txt", package = 'Giotto')
VC_small <- createGiottoObject(raw_exprs = expr_path, spatial_locs = loc_path)

# 2. normalize giotto
VC_small <- normalizeGiotto(gobject = VC_small, scalefactor = 6000)
VC_small <- addStatistics(gobject = VC_small)

# 3. dimension reduction
VC_small <- calculateHVG(gobject = VC_small)
VC_small <- runPCA(gobject = VC_small)
VC_small <- runUMAP(VC_small, dimensions_to_use = 1:5, n_threads = 2)
plotUMAP(gobject = VC_small)
```

---

screePlot

*screePlot*


---

## Description

identify significant principal components (PCs) using an screeplot (a.k.a. elbowplot)

## Usage

```
screePlot(
  gobject,
  name = "pca",
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reduction = c("cells", "genes"),
  method = c("irlba", "factominer"),
  rev = FALSE,
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  center = F,
  scale_unit = F,
  ncp = 100,
  ylim = c(0, 20),
  verbose = T,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "screePlot",
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name of PCA object if available
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>reduction</code>	cells or genes
<code>method</code>	which implementation to use
<code>rev</code>	do a reverse PCA
<code>genes_to_use</code>	subset of genes to use for PCA
<code>center</code>	center data before PCA
<code>scale_unit</code>	scale features before PCA
<code>ncp</code>	number of principal components to calculate
<code>ylim</code>	y-axis limits on scree plot
<code>verbose</code>	verbosity
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object

save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
...	additional arguments to pca function, see <a href="#">runPCA</a>

### Details

Screeplot works by plotting the explained variance of each individual PC in a barplot allowing you to identify which PC provides a significant contribution (a.k.a 'elbow method').

Screeplot will use an available pca object, based on the parameter 'name', or it will create it if it's not available (see [runPCA](#))

### Value

ggplot object for scree method

### Examples

```
screePlot(gobject)
```

---

selectPatternGenes	<i>selectPatternGenes</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

---

### Description

Select genes correlated with spatial patterns

### Usage

```
selectPatternGenes(
  spatPatObj,
  dimensions = 1:5,
  top_pos_genes = 10,
  top_neg_genes = 10,
  min_pos_cor = 0.5,
  min_neg_cor = -0.5,
  return_top_selection = FALSE
)
```

### Arguments

spatPatObj	Output from detectSpatialPatterns
dimensions	dimensions to identify correlated genes for.
top_pos_genes	Top positively correlated genes.
top_neg_genes	Top negatively correlated genes.
min_pos_cor	Minimum positive correlation score to include a gene.
min_neg_cor	Minimum negative correlation score to include a gene.

**Details**

Description.

**Value**

Data.table with genes associated with selected dimension (PC).

**Examples**

```
selectPatternGenes(gobject)
```

---

```
select_expression_values  
      select_expression_values
```

---

**Description**

helper function to select expression values

**Usage**

```
select_expression_values(gobject, values)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>values</code>	expression values to extract

**Value**

expression matrix

---

```
select_spatialNetwork  select_spatialNetwork
```

---

**Description**

function to select a spatial network

**Usage**

```
select_spatialNetwork(gobject, name = NULL, return_network_Obj = FALSE)
```



---

```
set_giotto_python_path
    set_giotto_python_path
```

---

**Description**

sets the python path and/or install miniconda and the python modules

**Usage**

```
set_giotto_python_path(
    python_path = NULL,
    packages_to_install = c("pandas", "networkx", "python-igraph", "leidenalg",
        "python-louvain", "python.app", "scikit-learn")
)
```

---

```
show,giotto-method    show method for giotto class
```

---

**Description**

show method for giotto class

**Usage**

```
## S4 method for signature 'giotto'
show(object)
```

---

```
showClusterDendrogram    showClusterDendrogram
```

---

**Description**

Creates dendrogram for selected clusters.

**Usage**

```
showClusterDendrogram(
    gobject,
    expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
    cluster_column,
    cor = c("pearson", "spearman"),
    distance = "ward.D",
    h = NULL,
    h_color = "red",
    rotate = FALSE,
    show_plot = NA,
```

```

    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "showClusterDendrogram",
    ...
  )

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	name of column to use for clusters
<code>cor</code>	correlation score to calculate distance
<code>distance</code>	distance method to use for hierarchical clustering
<code>h</code>	height of horizontal lines to plot
<code>h_color</code>	color of horizontal lines
<code>rotate</code>	rotate dendrogram 90 degrees
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>...</code>	additional parameters for <code>ggdendrogram()</code>

### Details

Expression correlation dendrogram for selected clusters.

### Value

ggplot

### Examples

```
showClusterDendrogram(gobject)
```

---

<code>showClusterHeatmap</code>	<i>showClusterHeatmap</i>
---------------------------------	---------------------------

---

### Description

Creates heatmap based on identified clusters

**Usage**

```
showClusterHeatmap(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes = "all",
  cluster_column,
  cor = c("pearson", "spearman"),
  distance = "ward.D",
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "showClusterHeatmap",
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	vector of genes to use, default to 'all'
<code>cluster_column</code>	name of column to use for clusters
<code>cor</code>	correlation score to calculate distance
<code>distance</code>	distance method to use for hierarchical clustering
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>...</code>	additional parameters for the Heatmap function from ComplexHeatmap

**Details**

Correlation heatmap of selected clusters.

**Value**

ggplot

**Examples**

```
showClusterHeatmap(gobject)
```

---

showGiottoImageNames	<i>showGiottoImageNames</i>
----------------------	-----------------------------

---

**Description**

Prints the available giotto images that are attached to the Giotto object

**Usage**

```
showGiottoImageNames(gobject, verbose = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	a giotto object
verbose	verbosity of function

**Value**

a vector of giotto image names attached to the giotto object

**Examples**

```
showGiottoImageNames(gobject)
```

---

showGiottoInstructions	<i>showGiottoInstructions</i>
------------------------	-------------------------------

---

**Description**

Function to display all instructions from giotto object

**Usage**

```
showGiottoInstructions(gobject)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
---------	---------------

**Value**

named vector with giotto instructions

**Examples**

```
showGiottoInstructions()
```

---

`showGrids`*showGrids*

---

**Description**

Prints the available spatial grids that are attached to the Giotto object

**Usage**

```
showGrids(gobject, verbose = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	a giotto object
<code>verbose</code>	verbosity of function#'

**Value**

vector

**Examples**

```
showGrids()
```

---

`showNetworks`*showNetworks*

---

**Description**

Prints the available spatial networks that are attached to the Giotto object

**Usage**

```
showNetworks(gobject, verbose = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	a giotto object
<code>verbose</code>	verbosity of function#'

**Value**

vector

**Examples**

```
showNetworks()
```

---

showPattern	<i>showPattern</i>
-------------	--------------------

---

## Description

show patterns for 2D spatial data

## Usage

```
showPattern(gobject, spatPatObj, ...)
```

## Arguments

gobject	giotto object
spatPatObj	Output from detectSpatialPatterns
dimension	dimension to plot
trim	Trim ends of the PC values.
background_color	background color for plot
grid_border_color	color for grid
show_legend	show legend of ggplot
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

## Value

ggplot

## See Also

[showPattern2D](#)

## Examples

```
showPattern(gobject)
```

---

showPattern2D	<i>showPattern2D</i>
---------------	----------------------

---

## Description

show patterns for 2D spatial data

## Usage

```
showPattern2D(
  gobject,
  spatPatObj,
  dimension = 1,
  trim = c(0.02, 0.98),
  background_color = "white",
  grid_border_color = "grey",
  show_legend = T,
  point_size = 1,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "showPattern2D"
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>spatPatObj</code>	Output from <code>detectSpatialPatterns</code>
<code>dimension</code>	dimension to plot
<code>trim</code>	Trim ends of the PC values.
<code>background_color</code>	background color for plot
<code>grid_border_color</code>	color for grid
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend of ggplot
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

## Value

ggplot

## Examples

```
showPattern2D(gobject)
```

showPattern3D

*showPattern3D***Description**

show patterns for 3D spatial data

**Usage**

```
showPattern3D(
  gobject,
  spatPatObj,
  dimension = 1,
  trim = c(0.02, 0.98),
  background_color = "white",
  grid_border_color = "grey",
  show_legend = T,
  point_size = 1,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "showPattern3D"
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>spatPatObj</code>	Output from <code>detectSpatialPatterns</code>
<code>dimension</code>	dimension to plot
<code>trim</code>	Trim ends of the PC values.
<code>background_color</code>	background color for plot
<code>grid_border_color</code>	color for grid
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend of plot
<code>point_size</code>	adjust the point size
<code>axis_scale</code>	scale the axis
<code>custom_ratio</code>	customize the scale of the axis
<code>x_ticks</code>	the tick number of <code>x_axis</code>
<code>y_ticks</code>	the tick number of <code>y_axis</code>
<code>z_ticks</code>	the tick number of <code>z_axis</code>



show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return plot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

**Value**

plotly

**Examples**

```
showPattern3D(gobject)
```

---

showPatternGenes	<i>showPatternGenes</i>
------------------	-------------------------

---

**Description**

show genes correlated with spatial patterns

**Usage**

```
showPatternGenes(
  gobject,
  spatPatObj,
  dimension = 1,
  top_pos_genes = 5,
  top_neg_genes = 5,
  point_size = 1,
  return_DT = FALSE,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "showPatternGenes"
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
spatPatObj	Output from detectSpatialPatterns
dimension	dimension to plot genes for.
top_pos_genes	Top positively correlated genes.
top_neg_genes	Top negatively correlated genes.
point_size	size of points
return_DT	if TRUE, it will return the data.table used to generate the plots
show_plot	show plot

return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

**Value**

ggplot

**Examples**

```
showPatternGenes(gobject)
```

---

showProcessingSteps	<i>showProcessingSteps</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

---

**Description**

shows the sequential processing steps that were performed in a summarized format

**Usage**

```
showProcessingSteps(gobject)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
---------	---------------

**Value**

list of processing steps and names

**Examples**

```
showProcessingSteps(gobject)
```

---

showSaveParameters	<i>showSaveParameters</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

---

**Description**

Description of Giotto saving options, links to [all\\_plots\\_save\\_function](#)

**Usage**

```
showSaveParameters()
```

**Value**

Instruction on how to use the automatic plot saving options within Giotto

**Examples**

```
showSaveParameters()
```

---

showSpatialCorGenes	<i>showSpatialCorGenes</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

---

**Description**

Shows and filters spatially correlated genes

**Usage**

```
showSpatialCorGenes(
  spatCorObject,
  use_clus_name = NULL,
  selected_clusters = NULL,
  genes = NULL,
  min_spat_cor = 0.5,
  min_expr_cor = NULL,
  min_cor_diff = NULL,
  min_rank_diff = NULL,
  show_top_genes = NULL
)
```

**Arguments**

spatCorObject	spatial correlation object
use_clus_name	cluster information to show
selected_clusters	subset of clusters to show
genes	subset of genes to show
min_spat_cor	filter on minimum spatial correlation
min_expr_cor	filter on minimum single-cell expression correlation

min\_cor\_diff    filter on minimum correlation difference (spatial vs expression)  
 min\_rank\_diff   filter on minimum correlation rank difference (spatial vs expression)  
 show\_top\_genes   show top genes per gene

**Value**

data.table with filtered information

**Examples**

```
showSpatialCorGenes(gobject)
```

---

signPCA	<i>signPCA</i>
---------	----------------

---

**Description**

identify significant principal components (PCs)

**Usage**

```
signPCA(
  gobject,
  name = "pca",
  method = c("screeplot", "jackstraw"),
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reduction = c("cells", "genes"),
  pca_method = c("irlba", "factominer"),
  rev = FALSE,
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  center = T,
  scale_unit = T,
  ncp = 50,
  scree_ylim = c(0, 10),
  jack_iter = 10,
  jack_threshold = 0.01,
  jack_ylim = c(0, 1),
  verbose = TRUE,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "signPCA"
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject            giotto object  
 name              name of PCA object if available  
 method            method to use to identify significant PCs

expression_values	expression values to use
reduction	cells or genes
pca_method	which implementation to use
rev	do a reverse PCA
genes_to_use	subset of genes to use for PCA
center	center data before PCA
scale_unit	scale features before PCA
ncp	number of principal components to calculate
scree_ylim	y-axis limits on scree plot
jack_iter	number of iterations for jackstraw
jack_threshold	p-value threshold to call a PC significant
jack_ylim	y-axis limits on jackstraw plot
verbose	verbosity
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

## Details

Two different methods can be used to assess the number of relevant or significant principal components (PC's).

1. Screeplot works by plotting the explained variance of each individual PC in a barplot allowing you to identify which PC provides a significant contribution (a.k.a. 'elbow method').
2. The Jackstraw method uses the [permutationPA](#) function. By systematically permuting genes it identifies robust, and thus significant, PCs.

## Value

ggplot object for scree method and maxtrix of p-values for jackstraw

## Examples

```
signPCA(gobject)
```

---

silhouetteRank	<i>silhouetteRank</i>
----------------	-----------------------

---

## Description

Previously: `calculate_spatial_genes_python`. This method computes a silhouette score per gene based on the spatial distribution of two partitions of cells (expressed L1, and non-expressed L0). Here, rather than L2 Euclidean norm, it uses a rank-transformed, exponentially weighted function to represent the local physical distance between two cells.

## Usage

```
silhouetteRank(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  metric = "euclidean",
  subset_genes = NULL,
  rbp_p = 0.95,
  examine_top = 0.3,
  python_path = NULL
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>metric</code>	distance metric to use
<code>subset_genes</code>	only run on this subset of genes
<code>rbp_p</code>	fractional binarization threshold
<code>examine_top</code>	top fraction to evaluate with silhouette
<code>python_path</code>	specify specific path to python if required

## Value

data.table with spatial scores

## Examples

```
silhouetteRank(gobject)
```

---

spatCellCellcom	<i>spatCellCellcom</i>
-----------------	------------------------

---

## Description

Spatial Cell-Cell communication scores based on spatial expression of interacting cells

## Usage

```
spatCellCellcom(
  gobject,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  cluster_column = "cell_types",
  random_iter = 1000,
  gene_set_1,
  gene_set_2,
  log2FC_addendum = 0.1,
  min_observations = 2,
  adjust_method = c("fdr", "bonferroni", "BH", "holm", "hochberg", "hommel", "BY",
    "none"),
  adjust_target = c("genes", "cells"),
  do_parallel = TRUE,
  cores = NA,
  verbose = c("a little", "a lot", "none")
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object to use
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	spatial network to use for identifying interacting cells
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell type information
<code>random_iter</code>	number of iterations
<code>gene_set_1</code>	first specific gene set from gene pairs
<code>gene_set_2</code>	second specific gene set from gene pairs
<code>log2FC_addendum</code>	addendum to add when calculating log2FC
<code>min_observations</code>	minimum number of interactions needed to be considered
<code>adjust_method</code>	which method to adjust p-values
<code>adjust_target</code>	adjust multiple hypotheses at the cell or gene level
<code>do_parallel</code>	run calculations in parallel with mclapply
<code>cores</code>	number of cores to use if <code>do_parallel = TRUE</code>
<code>verbose</code>	verbose

## Details

Statistical framework to identify if pairs of genes (such as ligand-receptor combinations) are expressed at higher levels than expected based on a reshuffled null distribution of gene expression values in cells that are spatially in proximity to eachother.. More details will follow soon.

**Value**

Cell-Cell communication scores for gene pairs based on spatial interaction

**Examples**

```
spatCellCellcom(gobject)
```

---

spatCellPlot	<i>spatCellPlot</i>
--------------	---------------------

---

**Description**

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

**Usage**

```
spatCellPlot(...)
```

**Arguments**

```
...           Arguments passed on to spatCellPlot2D
gobject      giotto object
show_image   show a tissue background image
gimage       a giotto image
image_name   name of a giotto image
sdimx        x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
sdimy        y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
spat_enr_names names of spatial enrichment results to include
cell_annotation_values numeric cell annotation columns
cell_color_gradient vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits vector with lower and upper limits
select_cell_groups select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells select subset of cells based on cell IDs
point_shape  shape of points (border, no_border or voronoi)
point_size   size of point (cell)
point_alpha  transparency of spatial points
point_border_col color of border around points
point_border_stroke stroke size of border around points
show_cluster_center plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size size of center points
label_size   size of labels
label_fontface font of labels
show_network show underlying spatial network
spatial_network_name name of spatial network to use
```



network\_color color of spatial network  
 network\_alpha alpha of spatial network  
 show\_grid show spatial grid  
 spatial\_grid\_name name of spatial grid to use  
 grid\_color color of spatial grid  
 show\_other\_cells display not selected cells  
 other\_cell\_color color of not selected cells  
 other\_point\_size point size of not selected cells  
 other\_cells\_alpha alpha of not selected cells  
 coord\_fix\_ratio fix ratio between x and y-axis  
 show\_legend show legend  
 legend\_text size of legend text  
 legend\_symbol\_size size of legend symbols  
 background\_color color of plot background  
 vor\_border\_color border color for voronoi plot  
 vor\_max\_radius maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'  
 vor\_alpha transparency of voronoi 'cells'  
 axis\_text size of axis text  
 axis\_title size of axis title  
 show\_plot show plot  
 return\_plot return ggplot object  
 save\_plot directly save the plot [boolean]  
 save\_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)  
 default\_save\_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save\_name in save\_param

## Details

Description of parameters.

## Value

ggplot

## See Also

Other spatial cell annotation visualizations: [spatCellPlot2D\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
spatCellPlot(gobject)
```

---

spatCellPlot2D

*spatCellPlot2D*


---

## Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

## Usage

```
spatCellPlot2D(
  gobject,
  show_image = F,
  gimage = NULL,
  image_name = "image",
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  cell_annotation_values = NULL,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  point_shape = c("border", "no_border", "voronoi"),
  point_size = 3,
  point_alpha = 1,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = F,
  center_point_size = 4,
  center_point_border_col = "black",
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  label_size = 4,
  label_fontface = "bold",
  show_network = F,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  network_color = NULL,
  network_alpha = 1,
  show_grid = F,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  grid_color = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 1,
  other_cells_alpha = 0.1,
  coord_fix_ratio = NULL,
  show_legend = T,
  legend_text = 8,
  legend_symbol_size = 1,
  background_color = "white",
```

```

    vor_border_color = "white",
    vor_max_radius = 200,
    vor_alpha = 1,
    axis_text = 8,
    axis_title = 8,
    cow_n_col = 2,
    cow_rel_h = 1,
    cow_rel_w = 1,
    cow_align = "h",
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "spatCellPlot2D"
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>show_image</code>	show a tissue background image
<code>gimage</code>	a giotto image
<code>image_name</code>	name of a giotto image
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>cell_annotation_values</code>	numeric cell annotation columns
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>point_shape</code>	shape of points (border, no_border or voronoi)
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_alpha</code>	transparency of spatial points
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters
<code>show_center_label</code>	plot label of selected clusters

center_point_size	size of center points
label_size	size of labels
label_fontface	font of labels
show_network	show underlying spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
network_color	color of spatial network
network_alpha	alpha of spatial network
show_grid	show spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
grid_color	color of spatial grid
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	point size of not selected cells
other_cells_alpha	alpha of not selected cells
coord_fix_ratio	fix ratio between x and y-axis
show_legend	show legend
legend_text	size of legend text
legend_symbol_size	size of legend symbols
background_color	color of plot background
vor_border_color	border color for voronoi plot
vor_max_radius	maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'
vor_alpha	transparency of voronoi 'cells'
axis_text	size of axis text
axis_title	size of axis title
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

## Details

Description of parameters.

**Value**

ggplot

**See Also**

Other spatial cell annotation visualizations: [spatCellPlot\(\)](#)

**Examples**

spatCellPlot2D(gobject)

---

spatDimCellPlot	<i>spatDimCellPlot</i>
-----------------	------------------------

---

**Description**

Visualize numerical features of cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in 2D

**Usage**

spatDimCellPlot(...)

**Arguments**

... Arguments passed on to [spatDimCellPlot2D](#)  
gobject giotto object  
show\_image show a tissue background image  
gimage a giotto image  
image\_name name of a giotto image  
plot\_alignment direction to align plot  
spat\_enr\_names names of spatial enrichment results to include  
cell\_annotation\_values numeric cell annotation columns  
dim\_reduction\_to\_use dimension reduction to use  
dim\_reduction\_name dimension reduction name  
dim1\_to\_use dimension to use on x-axis  
dim2\_to\_use dimension to use on y-axis  
sdimx = spatial dimension to use on x-axis  
sdimy = spatial dimension to use on y-axis  
cell\_color\_gradient vector with 3 colors for numeric data  
gradient\_midpoint midpoint for color gradient  
gradient\_limits vector with lower and upper limits  
select\_cell\_groups select subset of cells/clusters based on cell\_color parameter  
select\_cells select subset of cells based on cell IDs  
dim\_point\_shape dim reduction points with border or not (border or no\_border)  
dim\_point\_size size of points in dim. reduction space  
dim\_point\_alpha transparency of dim. reduction points

dim\_point\_border\_col border color of points in dim. reduction space  
 dim\_point\_border\_stroke border stroke of points in dim. reduction space  
 spat\_point\_shape shape of points (border, no\_border or voronoi)  
 spat\_point\_size size of spatial points  
 spat\_point\_alpha transparency of spatial points  
 spat\_point\_border\_col border color of spatial points  
 spat\_point\_border\_stroke border stroke of spatial points  
 dim\_show\_cluster\_center show the center of each cluster  
 dim\_show\_center\_label provide a label for each cluster  
 dim\_center\_point\_size size of the center point  
 dim\_center\_point\_border\_col border color of center point  
 dim\_center\_point\_border\_stroke stroke size of center point  
 dim\_label\_size size of the center label  
 dim\_label\_fontface font of the center label  
 spat\_show\_cluster\_center show the center of each cluster  
 spat\_show\_center\_label provide a label for each cluster  
 spat\_center\_point\_size size of the center point  
 spat\_label\_size size of the center label  
 spat\_label\_fontface font of the center label  
 show\_NN\_network show underlying NN network  
 nn\_network\_to\_use type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)  
 nn\_network\_name name of NN network to use, if show\_NN\_network = TRUE  
 dim\_edge\_alpha column to use for alpha of the edges  
 spat\_show\_network show spatial network  
 spatial\_network\_name name of spatial network to use  
 spat\_network\_color color of spatial network  
 spat\_show\_grid show spatial grid  
 spatial\_grid\_name name of spatial grid to use  
 spat\_grid\_color color of spatial grid  
 show\_other\_cells display not selected cells  
 other\_cell\_color color of not selected cells  
 dim\_other\_point\_size size of not selected dim cells  
 spat\_other\_point\_size size of not selected spat cells  
 spat\_other\_cells\_alpha alpha of not selected spat cells  
 coord\_fix\_ratio ratio for coordinates  
 cow\_n\_col cowplot param: how many columns  
 cow\_rel\_h cowplot param: relative height  
 cow\_rel\_w cowplot param: relative width  
 cow\_align cowplot param: how to align  
 show\_legend show legend  
 legend\_text size of legend text  
 legend\_symbol\_size size of legend symbols  
 dim\_background\_color background color of points in dim. reduction space  
 spat\_background\_color background color of spatial points  
 vor\_border\_color border color for voronoi plot

```

vor_max_radius maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'
vor_alpha transparency of voronoi 'cells'
axis_text size of axis text
axis_title size of axis title
show_plot show plot
return_plot return ggplot object
save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
default_save_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name
in save_param

```

## Details

Description of parameters.

## Value

ggplot

## See Also

Other spatial and dimension reduction cell annotation visualizations: [spatDimCellPlot2D\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
spatDimCellPlot(gobject)
```

---

spatDimCellPlot2D	<i>spatDimCellPlot2D</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

---

## Description

Visualize numerical features of cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in 2D

## Usage

```

spatDimCellPlot2D(
  gobject,
  show_image = F,
  gimage = NULL,
  image_name = "image",
  plot_alignment = c("vertical", "horizontal"),
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  cell_annotation_values = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",

```

```

cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
gradient_midpoint = NULL,
gradient_limits = NULL,
select_cell_groups = NULL,
select_cells = NULL,
dim_point_shape = c("border", "no_border"),
dim_point_size = 1,
dim_point_alpha = 1,
dim_point_border_col = "black",
dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
spat_point_shape = c("border", "no_border", "voronoi"),
spat_point_size = 1,
spat_point_alpha = 1,
spat_point_border_col = "black",
spat_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
dim_show_cluster_center = F,
dim_show_center_label = T,
dim_center_point_size = 4,
dim_center_point_border_col = "black",
dim_center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
dim_label_size = 4,
dim_label_fontface = "bold",
spat_show_cluster_center = F,
spat_show_center_label = F,
spat_center_point_size = 4,
spat_center_point_border_col = "black",
spat_center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
spat_label_size = 4,
spat_label_fontface = "bold",
show_NN_network = F,
nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
nn_network_name = "sNN.pca",
dim_edge_alpha = 0.5,
spat_show_network = F,
spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
spat_network_color = "red",
spat_network_alpha = 0.5,
spat_show_grid = F,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
spat_grid_color = "green",
show_other_cells = TRUE,
other_cell_color = "grey",
dim_other_point_size = 0.5,
spat_other_point_size = 0.5,
spat_other_cells_alpha = 0.5,
show_legend = T,
legend_text = 8,
legend_symbol_size = 1,
dim_background_color = "white",
spat_background_color = "white",
vor_border_color = "white",
vor_max_radius = 200,

```



```

    vor_alpha = 1,
    axis_text = 8,
    axis_title = 8,
    coord_fix_ratio = NULL,
    cow_n_col = 2,
    cow_rel_h = 1,
    cow_rel_w = 1,
    cow_align = "h",
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "spatDimCellPlot2D"
)

```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>show_image</code>	show a tissue background image
<code>gimage</code>	a giotto image
<code>image_name</code>	name of a giotto image
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>cell_annotation_values</code>	numeric cell annotation columns
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>sdimx</code>	= spatial dimension to use on x-axis
<code>sdimy</code>	= spatial dimension to use on y-axis
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>dim_point_shape</code>	dim reduction points with border or not ( <code>border</code> or <code>no_border</code> )
<code>dim_point_size</code>	size of points in dim. reduction space
<code>dim_point_alpha</code>	transparency of dim. reduction points

```

dim_point_border_col
    border color of points in dim. reduction space
dim_point_border_stroke
    border stroke of points in dim. reduction space
spat_point_shape
    shape of points (border, no_border or voronoi)
spat_point_size
    size of spatial points
spat_point_alpha
    transparency of spatial points
spat_point_border_col
    border color of spatial points
spat_point_border_stroke
    border stroke of spatial points
dim_show_cluster_center
    show the center of each cluster
dim_show_center_label
    provide a label for each cluster
dim_center_point_size
    size of the center point
dim_center_point_border_col
    border color of center point
dim_center_point_border_stroke
    stroke size of center point
dim_label_size
    size of the center label
dim_label_fontface
    font of the center label
spat_show_cluster_center
    show the center of each cluster
spat_show_center_label
    provide a label for each cluster
spat_center_point_size
    size of the center point
spat_label_size
    size of the center label
spat_label_fontface
    font of the center label
show_NN_network
    show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use
    type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
nn_network_name
    name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
dim_edge_alpha
    column to use for alpha of the edges
spat_show_network
    show spatial network
spatial_network_name
    name of spatial network to use

```

spat_network_color	color of spatial network
spat_show_grid	show spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
spat_grid_color	color of spatial grid
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
dim_other_point_size	size of not selected dim cells
spat_other_point_size	size of not selected spat cells
spat_other_cells_alpha	alpha of not selected spat cells
show_legend	show legend
legend_text	size of legend text
legend_symbol_size	size of legend symbols
dim_background_color	background color of points in dim. reduction space
spat_background_color	background color of spatial points
vor_border_color	border color for voronoi plot
vor_max_radius	maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'
vor_alpha	transparency of voronoi 'cells'
axis_text	size of axis text
axis_title	size of axis title
coord_fix_ratio	ratio for coordinates
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

## Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

Other spatial and dimension reduction cell annotation visualizations: [spatDimCellPlot\(\)](#)

Examples

```
spatDimCellPlot2D(gobject)
```

---

spatDimGenePlot	<i>spatDimGenePlot</i>
-----------------	------------------------

---

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in ggplot mode

Usage

```
spatDimGenePlot(...)
```

Arguments

... Arguments passed on to [spatDimGenePlot2D](#)

gobject giotto object

show\_image show a tissue background image

gimage a giotto image

image\_name name of a giotto image

expression\_values gene expression values to use

plot\_alignment direction to align plot

genes genes to show

dim\_reduction\_to\_use dimension reduction to use

dim\_reduction\_name dimension reduction name

dim1\_to\_use dimension to use on x-axis

dim2\_to\_use dimension to use on y-axis

dim\_point\_shape dim reduction points with border or not (border or no\_border)

dim\_point\_size dim reduction plot: point size

dim\_point\_alpha transparency of dim. reduction points

dim\_point\_border\_col color of border around points

dim\_point\_border\_stroke stroke size of border around points

show\_NN\_network show underlying NN network

nn\_network\_to\_use type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)

network\_name name of NN network to use, if show\_NN\_network = TRUE

dim\_network\_color color of NN network

edge\_alpha\_dim dim reduction plot: column to use for alpha of the edges

scale\_alpha\_with\_expression scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter

`sdimx` spatial x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')  
`sdimy` spatial y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')  
`spatial_network_name` name of spatial network to use  
`spatial_network_color` color of spatial network  
`spatial_grid_name` name of spatial grid to use  
`spat_point_shape` spatial points with border or not (border or no\_border)  
`spat_point_size` spatial plot: point size  
`spat_point_alpha` transparency of spatial points  
`spat_point_border_col` color of border around points  
`spat_point_border_stroke` stroke size of border around points  
`cell_color_gradient` vector with 3 colors for numeric data  
`gradient_midpoint` midpoint for color gradient  
`gradient_limits` vector with lower and upper limits  
`show_legend` show legend  
`legend_text` size of legend text  
`dim_background_color` color of plot background for dimension plot  
`spat_background_color` color of plot background for spatial plot  
`vor_border_color` border color for voronoi plot  
`vor_max_radius` maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'  
`vor_alpha` transparency of voronoi 'cells'  
`axis_text` size of axis text  
`axis_title` size of axis title  
`cow_n_col` cowplot param: how many columns  
`cow_rel_h` cowplot param: relative height  
`cow_rel_w` cowplot param: relative width  
`cow_align` cowplot param: how to align  
`show_plot` show plots  
`return_plot` return ggplot object  
`save_plot` directly save the plot [boolean]  
`save_param` list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)  
`default_save_name` default save name for saving, don't change, change `save_name` in `save_param`

## Details

Description of parameters.

## Value

ggplot

## See Also

[spatDimGenePlot3D](#)

Other spatial and dimension reduction gene expression visualizations: [spatDimGenePlot2D\(\)](#), [spatDimGenePlot3D\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
spatDimGenePlot(gobject)
```

---

spatDimGenePlot2D	<i>spatDimGenePlot2D</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

---

## Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in ggplot mode

## Usage

```
spatDimGenePlot2D(
  gobject,
  show_image = F,
  gimage = NULL,
  image_name = "image",
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  plot_alignment = c("vertical", "horizontal"),
  genes,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim_point_shape = c("border", "no_border"),
  dim_point_size = 1,
  dim_point_alpha = 1,
  dim_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_NN_network = F,
  show_spatial_network = F,
  dim_network_color = "gray",
  show_spatial_grid = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  edge_alpha_dim = NULL,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  spatial_network_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  spat_point_shape = c("border", "no_border", "voronoi"),
  spat_point_size = 1,
  spat_point_alpha = 1,
  spat_point_border_col = "black",
  spat_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
  cow_align = "h",
```

```

    show_legend = T,
    legend_text = 8,
    dim_background_color = "white",
    spat_background_color = "white",
    vor_border_color = "white",
    vor_max_radius = 200,
    vor_alpha = 1,
    axis_text = 8,
    axis_title = 8,
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "spatDimGenePlot2D"
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>show_image</code>	show a tissue background image
<code>gimage</code>	a giotto image
<code>image_name</code>	name of a giotto image
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim_point_shape</code>	dim reduction points with border or not (border or no_border)
<code>dim_point_size</code>	dim reduction plot: point size
<code>dim_point_alpha</code>	transparency of dim. reduction points
<code>dim_point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>dim_point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>dim_network_color</code>	color of NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>

edge\_alpha\_dim dim reduction plot: column to use for alpha of the edges  
 scale\_alpha\_with\_expression  
     scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter  
 sdimx spatial x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')  
 sdimy spatial y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')  
 spatial\_network\_name  
     name of spatial network to use  
 spatial\_network\_color  
     color of spatial network  
 spatial\_grid\_name  
     name of spatial grid to use  
 spat\_point\_shape  
     spatial points with border or not (border or no\_border)  
 spat\_point\_size  
     spatial plot: point size  
 spat\_point\_alpha  
     transparency of spatial points  
 spat\_point\_border\_col  
     color of border around points  
 spat\_point\_border\_stroke  
     stroke size of border around points  
 cell\_color\_gradient  
     vector with 3 colors for numeric data  
 gradient\_midpoint  
     midpoint for color gradient  
 gradient\_limits  
     vector with lower and upper limits  
 cow\_n\_col cowplot param: how many columns  
 cow\_rel\_h cowplot param: relative height  
 cow\_rel\_w cowplot param: relative width  
 cow\_align cowplot param: how to align  
 show\_legend show legend  
 legend\_text size of legend text  
 dim\_background\_color  
     color of plot background for dimension plot  
 spat\_background\_color  
     color of plot background for spatial plot  
 vor\_border\_color  
     border color for voronoi plot  
 vor\_max\_radius maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'  
 vor\_alpha transparency of voronoi 'cells'  
 axis\_text size of axis text  
 axis\_title size of axis title  
 show\_plot show plots  
 return\_plot return ggplot object  
 save\_plot directly save the plot [boolean]  
 save\_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)  
 default\_save\_name  
     default save name for saving, don't change, change save\_name in save\_param



## Details

Description of parameters.

## Value

ggplot

## See Also

[spatDimGenePlot3D](#)

Other spatial and dimension reduction gene expression visualizations: [spatDimGenePlot3D\(\)](#), [spatDimGenePlot\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
spatDimGenePlot2D(gobject)
```

---

spatDimGenePlot3D	<i>spatDimGenePlot3D</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

---

## Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in ggplot mode

## Usage

```
spatDimGenePlot3D(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  plot_alignment = c("horizontal", "vertical"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = NULL,
  sdinx = "sdinx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  sdimz = "sdimz",
  genes,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 1.5,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  label_size = 16,
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
```

```

genes_high_color = "red",
dim_point_size = 3,
nn_network_alpha = 0.5,
show_spatial_network = F,
spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
network_color = "lightgray",
spatial_network_alpha = 0.5,
show_spatial_grid = F,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
spatial_grid_color = NULL,
spatial_grid_alpha = 0.5,
spatial_point_size = 3,
legend_text_size = 12,
axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
custom_ratio = NULL,
x_ticks = NULL,
y_ticks = NULL,
z_ticks = NULL,
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "spatDimGenePlot3D"
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>dim_point_size</code>	dim reduction plot: point size
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use

spatial_point_size	spatial plot: point size
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return plotly object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
edge_alpha_dim	dim reduction plot: column to use for alpha of the edges
scale_alpha_with_expression	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
point_size	size of point (cell)
show_legend	show legend

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

See Also

Other spatial and dimension reduction gene expression visualizations: [spatDimGenePlot2D\(\)](#), [spatDimGenePlot\(\)](#)

Examples

```
spatDimGenePlot3D(gobject)
```

---

spatDimPlot	<i>spatDimPlot</i>
-------------	--------------------

---

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates 2D

Usage

```
spatDimPlot(...)
```

**Arguments**

... Arguments passed on to [spatDimPlot2D](#)

`gobject` giotto object

`show_image` show a tissue background image

`gimage` a giotto image

`image_name` name of a giotto image

`plot_alignment` direction to align plot

`dim_reduction_to_use` dimension reduction to use

`dim_reduction_name` dimension reduction name

`dim1_to_use` dimension to use on x-axis

`dim2_to_use` dimension to use on y-axis

`sdimx` = spatial dimension to use on x-axis

`sdimy` = spatial dimension to use on y-axis

`spat_enr_names` names of spatial enrichment results to include

`cell_color` color for cells (see details)

`color_as_factor` convert color column to factor

`cell_color_code` named vector with colors

`cell_color_gradient` vector with 3 colors for numeric data

`gradient_midpoint` midpoint for color gradient

`gradient_limits` vector with lower and upper limits

`select_cell_groups` select subset of cells/clusters based on `cell_color` parameter

`select_cells` select subset of cells based on cell IDs

`dim_point_shape` point with border or not (`border` or `no_border`)

`dim_point_size` size of points in dim. reduction space

`dim_point_alpha` transparency of point in dim. reduction space

`dim_point_border_col` border color of points in dim. reduction space

`dim_point_border_stroke` border stroke of points in dim. reduction space

`spat_point_shape` shape of points (`border`, `no_border` or `voronoi`)

`spat_point_size` size of spatial points

`spat_point_alpha` transparency of spatial points

`spat_point_border_col` border color of spatial points

`spat_point_border_stroke` border stroke of spatial points

`dim_show_cluster_center` show the center of each cluster

`dim_show_center_label` provide a label for each cluster

`dim_center_point_size` size of the center point

`dim_center_point_border_col` border color of center point

`dim_center_point_border_stroke` stroke size of center point

`dim_label_size` size of the center label

`dim_label_fontface` font of the center label

`spat_show_cluster_center` show the center of each cluster

`spat_show_center_label` provide a label for each cluster

`spat_center_point_size` size of the center point

`spat_label_size` size of the center label

`spat_label_fontface` font of the center label

`show_NN_network` show underlying NN network  
`nn_network_to_use` type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)  
`network_name` name of NN network to use, if `show_NN_network = TRUE`  
`nn_network_alpha` column to use for alpha of the edges  
`show_spatial_network` show spatial network  
`spat_network_name` name of spatial network to use  
`spat_network_color` color of spatial network  
`show_spatial_grid` show spatial grid  
`spat_grid_name` name of spatial grid to use  
`spat_grid_color` color of spatial grid  
`show_other_cells` display not selected cells  
`other_cell_color` color of not selected cells  
`dim_other_point_size` size of not selected dim cells  
`spat_other_point_size` size of not selected spat cells  
`spat_other_cells_alpha` alpha of not selected spat cells  
`dim_show_legend` show legend of dimension reduction plot  
`spat_show_legend` show legend of spatial plot  
`legend_text` size of legend text  
`legend_symbol_size` size of legend symbols  
`dim_background_color` background color of points in dim. reduction space  
`spat_background_color` background color of spatial points  
`vor_border_color` border color for voronoi plot  
`vor_max_radius` maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'  
`vor_alpha` transparency of voronoi 'cells'  
`axis_text` size of axis text  
`axis_title` size of axis title  
`show_plot` show plot  
`return_plot` return ggplot object  
`save_plot` directly save the plot [boolean]  
`save_param` list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)  
`default_save_name` default save name for saving, don't change, change `save_name` in `save_param`

## Details

Description of parameters.

## Value

ggplot

## See Also

[spatDimPlot2D](#) and [spatDimPlot3D](#) for 3D visualization.

Other spatial and dimension reduction visualizations: [spatDimPlot2D\(\)](#), [spatDimPlot3D\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
spatDimPlot(gobject)
```

---

spatDimPlot2D

*spatDimPlot2D*


---

## Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates 2D

## Usage

```
spatDimPlot2D(
  gobject,
  show_image = F,
  gimage = NULL,
  image_name = "image",
  plot_alignment = c("vertical", "horizontal"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  dim_point_shape = c("border", "no_border"),
  dim_point_size = 1,
  dim_point_alpha = 1,
  dim_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  spat_point_shape = c("border", "no_border", "voronoi"),
  spat_point_size = 1,
  spat_point_alpha = 1,
  spat_point_border_col = "black",
  spat_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  dim_show_cluster_center = F,
  dim_show_center_label = T,
  dim_center_point_size = 4,
  dim_center_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  dim_label_size = 4,
  dim_label_fontface = "bold",
  spat_show_cluster_center = F,
  spat_show_center_label = F,
  spat_center_point_size = 4,
  spat_label_size = 4,
```

```

    spat_label_fontface = "bold",
    show_NN_network = F,
    nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
    network_name = "sNN.pca",
    nn_network_alpha = 0.05,
    show_spatial_network = F,
    spat_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
    spat_network_color = "blue",
    spat_network_alpha = 0.5,
    show_spatial_grid = F,
    spat_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
    spat_grid_color = "blue",
    show_other_cells = T,
    other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
    dim_other_point_size = 1,
    spat_other_point_size = 1,
    spat_other_cells_alpha = 0.5,
    dim_show_legend = F,
    spat_show_legend = F,
    legend_text = 8,
    legend_symbol_size = 1,
    dim_background_color = "white",
    spat_background_color = "white",
    vor_border_color = "white",
    vor_max_radius = 200,
    vor_alpha = 1,
    axis_text = 8,
    axis_title = 8,
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "spatDimPlot2D"
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>show_image</code>	show a tissue background image
<code>gimage</code>	a giotto image
<code>image_name</code>	name of a giotto image
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>sdimx</code>	= spatial dimension to use on x-axis
<code>sdimy</code>	= spatial dimension to use on y-axis

spat_enr_names	names of spatial enrichment results to include
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
cell_color_gradient	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint	midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits	vector with lower and upper limits
select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
dim_point_shape	point with border or not (border or no_border)
dim_point_size	size of points in dim. reduction space
dim_point_alpha	transparency of point in dim. reduction space
dim_point_border_col	border color of points in dim. reduction space
dim_point_border_stroke	border stroke of points in dim. reduction space
spat_point_shape	shape of points (border, no_border or voronoi)
spat_point_size	size of spatial points
spat_point_alpha	transparency of spatial points
spat_point_border_col	border color of spatial points
spat_point_border_stroke	border stroke of spatial points
dim_show_cluster_center	show the center of each cluster
dim_show_center_label	provide a label for each cluster
dim_center_point_size	size of the center point
dim_center_point_border_col	border color of center point
dim_center_point_border_stroke	stroke size of center point
dim_label_size	size of the center label
dim_label_fontface	font of the center label



spat_show_cluster_center	show the center of each cluster
spat_show_center_label	provide a label for each cluster
spat_center_point_size	size of the center point
spat_label_size	size of the center label
spat_label_fontface	font of the center label
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
nn_network_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
show_spatial_network	show spatial network
spat_network_name	name of spatial network to use
spat_network_color	color of spatial network
show_spatial_grid	show spatial grid
spat_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
spat_grid_color	color of spatial grid
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
dim_other_point_size	size of not selected dim cells
spat_other_point_size	size of not selected spat cells
spat_other_cells_alpha	alpha of not selected spat cells
dim_show_legend	show legend of dimension reduction plot
spat_show_legend	show legend of spatial plot
legend_text	size of legend text
legend_symbol_size	size of legend symbols
dim_background_color	background color of points in dim. reduction space
spat_background_color	background color of spatial points

vor_border_color	border color for voronoi plot
vor_max_radius	maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'
vor_alpha	transparency of voronoi 'cells'
axis_text	size of axis text
axis_title	size of axis title
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatDimPlot3D](#)  
Other spatial and dimension reduction visualizations: [spatDimPlot3D\(\)](#), [spatDimPlot\(\)](#)

Examples

spatDimPlot2D(gobject)

---

spatDimPlot3D	<i>spatDimPlot3D</i>
---------------	----------------------

---

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in plotly mode

Usage

```
spatDimPlot3D(  
  gobject,  
  plot_alignment = c("horizontal", "vertical"),  
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",  
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",  
  dim1_to_use = 1,  
  dim2_to_use = 2,  
  dim3_to_use = 3,  
  sdimx = "sdimx",  
  sdimy = "sdimy",
```

```

    sdimz = "sdimz",
    show_NN_network = F,
    nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
    network_name = "sNN.pca",
    show_cluster_center = F,
    show_center_label = T,
    center_point_size = 4,
    label_size = 16,
    select_cell_groups = NULL,
    select_cells = NULL,
    show_other_cells = T,
    other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
    other_point_size = 1.5,
    cell_color = NULL,
    color_as_factor = T,
    cell_color_code = NULL,
    dim_point_size = 3,
    nn_network_alpha = 0.5,
    show_spatial_network = F,
    spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
    network_color = "lightgray",
    spatial_network_alpha = 0.5,
    show_spatial_grid = F,
    spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
    spatial_grid_color = NULL,
    spatial_grid_alpha = 0.5,
    spatial_point_size = 3,
    axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
    custom_ratio = NULL,
    x_ticks = NULL,
    y_ticks = NULL,
    z_ticks = NULL,
    legend_text_size = 12,
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "spatDimPlot3D"
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis

`sdimx` = spatial dimension to use on x-axis  
`sdimy` = spatial dimension to use on y-axis  
`sdimz` = spatial dimension to use on z-axis  
`show_NN_network`  
     show underlying NN network  
`nn_network_to_use`  
     type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)  
`network_name` name of NN network to use, if `show_NN_network = TRUE`  
`show_cluster_center`  
     show the center of each cluster  
`show_center_label`  
     provide a label for each cluster  
`center_point_size`  
     size of the center point  
`label_size` size of the center label  
`select_cell_groups`  
     select subset of cells/clusters based on `cell_color` parameter  
`select_cells` select subset of cells based on cell IDs  
`show_other_cells`  
     display not selected cells  
`other_cell_color`  
     color of not selected cells  
`other_point_size`  
     size of not selected cells  
`cell_color` color for cells (see details)  
`color_as_factor`  
     convert color column to factor  
`cell_color_code`  
     named vector with colors  
`dim_point_size` size of points in dim. reduction space  
`nn_network_alpha`  
     column to use for alpha of the edges  
`show_spatial_network`  
     show spatial network  
`spatial_network_name`  
     name of spatial network to use  
`spatial_network_alpha`  
     alpha of spatial network  
`show_spatial_grid`  
     show spatial grid  
`spatial_grid_name`  
     name of spatial grid to use  
`spatial_grid_color`  
     color of spatial grid  
`spatial_point_size`  
     size of spatial points  
`show_plot` show plot

return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
dim_point_border_col	border color of points in dim. reduction space
dim_point_border_stroke	border stroke of points in dim. reduction space
spatial_network_color	color of spatial network
spatial_other_point_size	size of not selected spatial points
spatial_other_cells_alpha	alpha of not selected spatial points
dim_other_point_size	size of not selected dim. reduction points
show_legend	show legend

## Details

Description of parameters.

## Value

plotly

## See Also

Other spatial and dimension reduction visualizations: [spatDimPlot2D\(\)](#), [spatDimPlot\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
spatDimPlot3D(gobject)
```

---

spatGenePlot	<i>spatGenePlot</i>
--------------	---------------------

---

## Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to spatial coordinates

## Usage

```
spatGenePlot(...)
```

**Arguments**

...

Arguments passed on to [spatGenePlot2D](#)

gobject giotto object

show\_image show a tissue background image

gimage a giotto image

image\_name name of a giotto image

sdmx x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdmx')

sdimy y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')

expression\_values gene expression values to use

genes genes to show

cell\_color\_gradient vector with 3 colors for numeric data

gradient\_midpoint midpoint for color gradient

gradient\_limits vector with lower and upper limits

show\_network show underlying spatial network

network\_color color of spatial network

spatial\_network\_name name of spatial network to use

show\_grid show spatial grid

grid\_color color of spatial grid

spatial\_grid\_name name of spatial grid to use

midpoint expression midpoint

scale\_alpha\_with\_expression scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter

point\_shape shape of points (border, no\_border or voronoi)

point\_size size of point (cell)

point\_alpha transparency of points

point\_border\_col color of border around points

point\_border\_stroke stroke size of border around points

cow\_n\_col cowplot param: how many columns

cow\_rel\_h cowplot param: relative height

cow\_rel\_w cowplot param: relative width

cow\_align cowplot param: how to align

show\_legend show legend

legend\_text size of legend text

background\_color color of plot background

vor\_border\_color border color for voronoi plot

vor\_max\_radius maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'

vor\_alpha transparency of voronoi 'cells'

axis\_text size of axis text

axis\_title size of axis title

show\_plot show plots

return\_plot return ggplot object

save\_plot directly save the plot [boolean]

save\_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)

default\_save\_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save\_name in save\_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatGenePlot3D](#) and [spatGenePlot2D](#)

Other spatial gene expression visualizations: [spatGenePlot2D\(\)](#), [spatGenePlot3D\(\)](#)

Examples

`spatGenePlot(gobject)`

---

spatGenePlot2D	<i>spatGenePlot2D</i>
----------------	-----------------------

---

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatGenePlot2D(  
  gobject,  
  show_image = F,  
  gimage = NULL,  
  image_name = "image",  
  sdimx = "sdimx",  
  sdimy = "sdimy",  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  genes,  
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),  
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,  
  gradient_limits = NULL,  
  show_network = F,  
  network_color = NULL,  
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",  
  edge_alpha = NULL,  
  show_grid = F,  
  grid_color = NULL,  
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",  
  midpoint = 0,  
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,  
  point_shape = c("border", "no_border", "voronoi"),  
  point_size = 1,  
  point_alpha = 1,  
  point_border_col = "black",  
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
```

```

show_legend = T,
legend_text = 8,
background_color = "white",
vor_border_color = "white",
vor_alpha = 1,
vor_max_radius = 200,
axis_text = 8,
axis_title = 8,
cow_n_col = 2,
cow_rel_h = 1,
cow_rel_w = 1,
cow_align = "h",
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "spatGenePlot2D"
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>show_image</code>	show a tissue background image
<code>gimage</code>	a giotto image
<code>image_name</code>	name of a giotto image
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>show_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>grid_color</code>	color of spatial grid
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>midpoint</code>	expression midpoint
<code>scale_alpha_with_expression</code>	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
<code>point_shape</code>	shape of points (border, no_border or voronoi)



point_size	size of point (cell)
point_alpha	transparency of points
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_legend	show legend
legend_text	size of legend text
background_color	color of plot background
vor_border_color	border color for voronoi plot
vor_alpha	transparency of voronoi 'cells'
vor_max_radius	maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'
axis_text	size of axis text
axis_title	size of axis title
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
...	additional parameters for cowplot::save_plot()

**Details**

Description of parameters.

**Value**

ggplot

**See Also**

[spatGenePlot3D](#)

Other spatial gene expression visualizations: [spatGenePlot3D\(\)](#), [spatGenePlot\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
spatGenePlot2D(gobject)
```

---

spatGenePlot3D

*spatGenePlot3D*


---

## Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to spatial coordinates

## Usage

```
spatGenePlot3D(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  show_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  show_grid = F,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 1,
  genes_high_color = NULL,
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  point_size = 2,
  show_legend = T,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "spatGenePlot3D"
)
```

## Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	gene expression values to use
genes	genes to show
show_network	show underlying spatial network
network_color	color of spatial network

spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
show_grid	show spatial grid
genes_high_color	color represents high gene expression
genes_mid_color	color represents middle gene expression
genes_low_color	color represents low gene expression
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
point_size	size of point (cell)
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
grid_color	color of spatial grid
midpoint	expression midpoint
scale_alpha_with_expression	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
...	additional parameters for cowplot::save_plot()

## Details

Description of parameters.

## Value

ggplot

## See Also

Other spatial gene expression visualizations: [spatGenePlot2D\(\)](#), [spatGenePlot\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
spatGenePlot3D(gobject)
```

---

spatialAEH

*spatialAEH*


---

## Description

Compute spatial variable genes with spatialDE method

## Usage

```
spatialAEH(
  gobject = NULL,
  SpatialDE_results = NULL,
  name_pattern = "AEH_patterns",
  expression_values = c("raw", "normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  pattern_num = 6,
  l = 1.05,
  python_path = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	Giotto object
<code>SpatialDE_results</code>	results of <a href="#">SpatialDE</a> function
<code>name_pattern</code>	name for the computed spatial patterns
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>pattern_num</code>	number of spatial patterns to look for
<code>l</code>	lengthscale
<code>python_path</code>	specify specific path to python if required
<code>return_gobject</code>	show plot

## Details

This function is a wrapper for the SpatialAEH method implemented in the ...

## Value

An updated giotto object

## Examples

```
spatialAEH(gobject)
```

spatialDE

*spatialDE***Description**

Compute spatial variable genes with spatialDE method

**Usage**

```
spatialDE(
  gobject = NULL,
  expression_values = c("raw", "normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  size = c(4, 2, 1),
  color = c("blue", "green", "red"),
  sig_alpha = 0.5,
  unsig_alpha = 0.5,
  python_path = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "SpatialDE"
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	Giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>size</code>	size of plot
<code>color</code>	low/medium/high color scheme for plot
<code>sig_alpha</code>	alpha value for significance
<code>unsig_alpha</code>	alpha value for unsignificance
<code>python_path</code>	specify specific path to python if required
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

**Details**

This function is a wrapper for the SpatialDE method implemented in the ...

**Value**

a list of data.frames with results and plot (optional)

## Examples

```
spatialDE(gobject)
```

---

```
spatNetwDistributions  spatNetwDistributionsDistance
```

---

## Description

This function return histograms displaying the distance distribution for each spatial k-neighbor

## Usage

```
spatNetwDistributions(
  gobject,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  distribution = c("distance", "k_neighbors"),
  hist_bins = 30,
  test_distance_limit = NULL,
  ncol = 1,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "spatNetwDistributions"
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	Giotto object
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network
<code>distribution</code>	show the distribution of cell-to-cell distance or number of k neighbors
<code>hist_bins</code>	number of binds to use for the histogram
<code>test_distance_limit</code>	effect of different distance threshold on k-neighbors
<code>ncol</code>	number of columns to visualize the histograms in
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, alternatively change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

## Details

The **distance** option shows the spatial distance distribution for each nearest neighbor rank (1st, 2nd, 3th, ... neighbor). With this option the user can also test the effect of a distance limit on the spatial network. This distance limit can be used to remove neighbor cells that are considered to far away. The **k\_neighbors** option shows the number of k neighbors distribution over all cells.

## Value

ggplot plot

## Examples

```
spatNetwDistributionsDistance(gobject)
```

---

spatNetwDistributionsDistance

*spatNetwDistributionsDistance*

---

## Description

This function return histograms displaying the distance distribution for each spatial k-neighbor

## Usage

```
spatNetwDistributionsDistance(  
  gobject,  
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",  
  hist_bins = 30,  
  test_distance_limit = NULL,  
  ncol = 1,  
  show_plot = NA,  
  return_plot = NA,  
  save_plot = NA,  
  save_param = list(),  
  default_save_name = "spatNetwDistributionsDistance"  
)
```

## Arguments

gobject	Giotto object
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network
hist_bins	number of binds to use for the histogram
test_distance_limit	effect of different distance threshold on k-neighbors
ncol	number of columns to visualize the histograms in
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, alternatively change save_name in save_param

## Value

ggplot plot

**Examples**

```
spatNetwDistributionsDistance(gobject)
```

---

```
spatNetwDistributionsKneighbors
```

```
spatNetwDistributionsKneighbors
```

---

**Description**

This function returns a histogram displaying the number of k-neighbors distribution for each cell

**Usage**

```
spatNetwDistributionsKneighbors(
  gobject,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  hist_bins = 30,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "spatNetwDistributionsKneighbors"
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	Giotto object
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network
<code>hist_bins</code>	number of binds to use for the histogram
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <a href="#">all_plots_save_function</a>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, alternatively change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

**Value**

ggplot plot

**Examples**

```
spatNetwDistributionsKneighbors(gobject)
```



---

spatPlot

*spatPlot*

---

## Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

## Usage

`spatPlot(...)`

## Arguments

... Arguments passed on to [spatPlot2D](#)

`gobject` giotto object

`show_image` show a tissue background image

`gimage` a giotto image

`image_name` name of a giotto image

`group_by_subset` subset the group\_by factor column

`sdimx` x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')

`sdimy` y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')

`spat_enr_names` names of spatial enrichment results to include

`cell_color` color for cells (see details)

`color_as_factor` convert color column to factor

`cell_color_code` named vector with colors

`cell_color_gradient` vector with 3 colors for numeric data

`gradient_midpoint` midpoint for color gradient

`gradient_limits` vector with lower and upper limits

`select_cell_groups` select subset of cells/clusters based on cell\_color parameter

`select_cells` select subset of cells based on cell IDs

`point_shape` shape of points (border, no\_border or voronoi)

`point_size` size of point (cell)

`point_alpha` transparency of point

`point_border_col` color of border around points

`point_border_stroke` stroke size of border around points

`show_cluster_center` plot center of selected clusters

`show_center_label` plot label of selected clusters

`center_point_size` size of center points

`label_size` size of labels

`label_fontface` font of labels

`show_network` show underlying spatial network

`spatial_network_name` name of spatial network to use

`network_color` color of spatial network

`network_alpha` alpha of spatial network

`show_grid` show spatial grid

spatial\_grid\_name name of spatial grid to use  
 grid\_color color of spatial grid  
 show\_other\_cells display not selected cells  
 other\_cell\_color color of not selected cells  
 other\_point\_size point size of not selected cells  
 other\_cells\_alpha alpha of not selected cells  
 coord\_fix\_ratio fix ratio between x and y-axis  
 title title of plot  
 show\_legend show legend  
 legend\_text size of legend text  
 legend\_symbol\_size size of legend symbols  
 background\_color color of plot background  
 vor\_border\_color border color for voronoi plot  
 vor\_max\_radius maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'  
 vor\_alpha transparency of voronoi 'cells'  
 axis\_text size of axis text  
 axis\_title size of axis title  
 cow\_n\_col cowplot param: how many columns  
 cow\_rel\_h cowplot param: relative height  
 cow\_rel\_w cowplot param: relative width  
 cow\_align cowplot param: how to align  
 show\_plot show plot  
 return\_plot return ggplot object  
 save\_plot directly save the plot [boolean]  
 save\_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)  
 default\_save\_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save\_name  
 in save\_param

## Details

Description of parameters.

## Value

ggplot

## See Also

[spatPlot3D](#)

Other spatial visualizations: [spatPlot2D\(\)](#), [spatPlot3D\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
spatPlot(gobject)
```

---

spatPlot2D

*spatPlot2D*


---

## Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

## Usage

```
spatPlot2D(
  gobject,
  show_image = F,
  gimage = NULL,
  image_name = "image",
  group_by = NULL,
  group_by_subset = NULL,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  point_shape = c("border", "no_border", "voronoi"),
  point_size = 3,
  point_alpha = 1,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = F,
  center_point_size = 4,
  center_point_border_col = "black",
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  label_size = 4,
  label_fontface = "bold",
  show_network = F,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  network_color = NULL,
  network_alpha = 1,
  show_grid = F,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  grid_color = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 1,
  other_cells_alpha = 0.1,
  coord_fix_ratio = NULL,
```

```

title = NULL,
show_legend = T,
legend_text = 8,
legend_symbol_size = 1,
background_color = "white",
vor_border_color = "white",
vor_max_radius = 200,
vor_alpha = 1,
axis_text = 8,
axis_title = 8,
cow_n_col = 2,
cow_rel_h = 1,
cow_rel_w = 1,
cow_align = "h",
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "spatPlot2D"
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>show_image</code>	show a tissue background image
<code>gimage</code>	a giotto image
<code>image_name</code>	name of a giotto image
<code>group_by_subset</code>	subset the <code>group_by</code> factor column
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>point_shape</code>	shape of points (border, no_border or voronoi)
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_alpha</code>	transparency of point

point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points
label_size	size of labels
label_fontface	font of labels
show_network	show underlying spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
network_color	color of spatial network
network_alpha	alpha of spatial network
show_grid	show spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
grid_color	color of spatial grid
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	point size of not selected cells
other_cells_alpha	alpha of not selected cells
coord_fix_ratio	fix ratio between x and y-axis
title	title of plot
show_legend	show legend
legend_text	size of legend text
legend_symbol_size	size of legend symbols
background_color	color of plot background
vor_border_color	border color for voronoi plot
vor_max_radius	maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'
vor_alpha	transparency of voronoi 'cells'
axis_text	size of axis text
axis_title	size of axis title
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns

cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
groub_by	create multiple plots based on cell annotation column

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatPlot3D](#)  
Other spatial visualizations: [spatPlot3D\(\)](#), [spatPlot\(\)](#)

Examples

spatPlot2D(gobject)

---

spatPlot3D	<i>spatPlot3D</i>
------------	-------------------

---

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatPlot3D(  
  gobject,  
  sdimx = "sdimx",  
  sdimy = "sdimy",  
  sdimz = "sdimz",  
  point_size = 3,  
  cell_color = NULL,  
  cell_color_code = NULL,  
  select_cell_groups = NULL,  
  select_cells = NULL,  
  show_other_cells = T,  
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
```

```

other_point_size = 0.5,
show_network = F,
network_color = NULL,
network_alpha = 1,
other_cell_alpha = 0.5,
spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
show_grid = F,
grid_color = NULL,
grid_alpha = 1,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
title = "",
show_legend = T,
axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
custom_ratio = NULL,
x_ticks = NULL,
y_ticks = NULL,
z_ticks = NULL,
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "spat3D"
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>sdimz</code>	z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>network_alpha</code>	opacity of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>show_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>grid_color</code>	color of spatial grid

grid_alpha	opacity of spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
title	title of plot
show_legend	show legend
axis_scale	the way to scale the axis
custom_ratio	customize the scale of the plot
x_ticks	set the number of ticks on the x-axis
y_ticks	set the number of ticks on the y-axis
z_ticks	set the number of ticks on the z-axis
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see <a href="#">showSaveParameters</a>
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

**Details**

Description of parameters.

**Value**

ggplot

**See Also**

Other spatial visualizations: [spatPlot2D\(\)](#), [spatPlot\(\)](#)

**Examples**

spatPlot3D(gobject)

---

spat_fish_func	<i>spat_fish_func</i>
----------------	-----------------------

---

**Description**

performs fisher exact test

**Usage**

spat\_fish\_func(gene, bin\_matrix, spat\_mat, calc\_hub = F, hub\_min\_int = 3)



---

spat_OR_func	<i>spat_OR_func</i>
--------------	---------------------

---

**Description**

calculate odds-ratio

**Usage**

```
spat_OR_func(gene, bin_matrix, spat_mat, calc_hub = F, hub_min_int = 3)
```

---

specificCellCellcommunicationScores	<i>specificCellCellcommunicationScores</i>
-------------------------------------	--

---

**Description**

Specific Cell-Cell communication scores based on spatial expression of interacting cells

**Usage**

```
specificCellCellcommunicationScores(  
  gobject,  
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",  
  cluster_column = "cell_types",  
  random_iter = 100,  
  cell_type_1 = "astrocyte",  
  cell_type_2 = "endothelial",  
  gene_set_1,  
  gene_set_2,  
  log2FC_addendum = 0.1,  
  min_observations = 2,  
  adjust_method = c("fdr", "bonferroni", "BH", "holm", "hochberg", "hommel", "BY",  
    "none"),  
  adjust_target = c("genes", "cells"),  
  verbose = T  
)
```

**Arguments**

- |                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| gobject              | giotto object to use                                     |
| spatial_network_name | spatial network to use for identifying interacting cells |
| cluster_column       | cluster column with cell type information                |
| random_iter          | number of iterations                                     |
| cell_type_1          | first cell type  |
| cell_type_2          | second cell type   |

gene_set_1	first specific gene set from gene pairs
gene_set_2	second specific gene set from gene pairs
log2FC_addendum	addendum to add when calculating log2FC
min_observations	minimum number of interactions needed to be considered
adjust_method	which method to adjust p-values
adjust_target	adjust multiple hypotheses at the cell or gene level
verbose	verbose

**Details**

Statistical framework to identify if pairs of genes (such as ligand-receptor combinations) are expressed at higher levels than expected based on a reshuffled null distribution of gene expression values in cells that are spatially in proximity to eachother.. More details will follow soon.

**Value**

Cell-Cell communication scores for gene pairs based on spatial interaction

**Examples**

```
specificCellCellcommunicationScores(gobject)
```

---

split_dendrogram_in_two
<i>split_dendrogram_in_two</i>

---

**Description**

Merge selected clusters based on pairwise correlation scores and size of cluster.

**Usage**

```
split_dendrogram_in_two(dend)
```

**Arguments**

dend	dendrogram object
------	-------------------

**Value**

list of two dendrograms and height of node

**Examples**

```
split_dendrogram_in_two(dend)
```

---

standardise_giotto	<i>standardise_giotto</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

---

**Description**

standardises a matrix

**Usage**

```
standardise_giotto(x, center = TRUE, scale = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

x	matrix
center	center data
scale	scale data

**Value**

standardized matrix

---

stitchFieldCoordinates	<i>stitchFieldCoordinates</i>
------------------------	-------------------------------

---

**Description**

Helper function to stitch field coordinates together to form one complete picture

**Usage**

```
stitchFieldCoordinates(  
  location_file,  
  offset_file,  
  cumulate_offset_x = F,  
  cumulate_offset_y = F,  
  field_col = "Field of View",  
  X_coord_col = "X",  
  Y_coord_col = "Y",  
  reverse_final_x = F,  
  reverse_final_y = T  
)
```

**Arguments**

`location_file` location dataframe with X and Y coordinates  
`offset_file` dataframe that describes the offset for each field (see details)  
`cumulate_offset_x`  
 (boolean) Do the x-axis offset values need to be cumulated?  
`cumulate_offset_y`  
 (boolean) Do the y-axis offset values need to be cumulated?  
`field_col` column that indicates the field within the `location_file`  
`X_coord_col` column that indicates the x coordinates  
`Y_coord_col` column that indicates the x coordinates  
`reverse_final_x`  
 (boolean) Do the final x coordinates need to be reversed?  
`reverse_final_y`  
 (boolean) Do the final y coordinates need to be reversed?

**Details**

Stitching of fields:

- 1. have cell locations: at least 3 columns: field, X, Y
- 2. create offset file: offset file has 3 columns: field, x\_offset, y\_offset
- 3. create new cell location file by stitching original cell locations with `stitchFieldCoordinates`
- 4. provide new cell location file to [createGiottoObject](#)

**Value**

Updated location dataframe with new X ['X\_final'] and Y ['Y\_final'] coordinates

**Examples**

```
stitchFieldCoordinates(gobject)
```

---

```
stitchTileCoordinates stitchTileCoordinates
```

---

**Description**

Helper function to stitch tile coordinates together to form one complete picture

**Usage**

```
stitchTileCoordinates(location_file, Xtilespan, Ytilespan)
```

**Arguments**

`location_file` location dataframe with X and Y coordinates  
`Xtilespan` numerical value specifying the width of each tile  
`Ytilespan` numerical value specifying the height of each tile

Details

...

Examples

```
stitchTileCoordinates(gobject)
```

---

subClusterCells	<i>subClusterCells</i>
-----------------	------------------------

---

Description

subcluster cells

Usage

```
subClusterCells(  
  gobject,  
  name = "sub_clus",  
  cluster_method = c("leiden", "louvain_community", "louvain_multinet"),  
  cluster_column = NULL,  
  selected_clusters = NULL,  
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values  
    = "normalized"),  
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,  
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,  
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,  
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,  
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),  
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),  
  k_neighbors = 10,  
  resolution = 1,  
  n_iterations = 1000,  
  gamma = 1,  
  omega = 1,  
  python_path = NULL,  
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",  
  network_name = "sNN.pca",  
  return_gobject = TRUE,  
  verbose = T  
)
```

Arguments

- gobject           giotto object
- name             name for new clustering result
- cluster\_method   clustering method to use
- cluster\_column   cluster column to subcluster
- selected\_clusters  
                  only do subclustering on these clusters

hvg_param	parameters for calculateHVG
hvg_min_perc_cells	threshold for detection in min percentage of cells
hvg_mean_expr_det	threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection
use_all_genes_as_hvg	forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA
min_nr_of_hvg	minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA
pca_param	parameters for runPCA
nn_param	parameters for parameters for createNearestNetwork
k_neighbors	number of k for createNearestNetwork
resolution	resolution
n_iterations	number of iterations to run the Leiden algorithm.
gamma	gamma
omega	omega
python_path	specify specific path to python if required
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
verbose	verbose

## Details

This function performs subclustering on selected clusters. The systematic steps are:

- 1. subset Giotto object
- 2. identify highly variable genes
- 3. run PCA
- 4. create nearest neighbouring network
- 5. do clustering

## Value

giotto object with new subclusters appended to cell metadata

## See Also

[doLouvainCluster\\_multinet](#), [doLouvainCluster\\_community](#) and @seealso [doLeidenCluster](#)

## Examples

```
subClusterCells(gobject)
```

---

`subsetGiotto`*subsetGiotto*

---

**Description**

subsets Giotto object including previous analyses.

**Usage**

```
subsetGiotto(gobject, cell_ids = NULL, gene_ids = NULL, verbose = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>cell_ids</code>	cell IDs to keep
<code>gene_ids</code>	gene IDs to keep
<code>verbose</code>	be verbose

**Value**

giotto object

**Examples**

```
subsetGiotto(gobject)
```

---

`subsetGiottoLocs`*subsetGiottoLocs*

---

**Description**

subsets Giotto object based on spatial locations

**Usage**

```
subsetGiottoLocs(  
  gobject,  
  x_max = NULL,  
  x_min = NULL,  
  y_max = NULL,  
  y_min = NULL,  
  z_max = NULL,  
  z_min = NULL,  
  return_gobject = T,  
  verbose = FALSE  
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>x_max</code>	maximum x-coordinate
<code>x_min</code>	minimum x-coordinate
<code>y_max</code>	maximum y-coordinate
<code>y_min</code>	minimum y-coordinate
<code>z_max</code>	maximum z-coordinate
<code>z_min</code>	minimum z-coordinate
<code>return_gobject</code>	return Giotto object

**Details**

if `return_gobject = FALSE`, then a filtered combined metadata `data.table` will be returned

**Value**

giotto object

**Examples**

```
subsetGiottoLocs(gobject)
```

---

trendSceek	<i>trendSceek</i>
------------	-------------------

---

**Description**

Compute spatial variable genes with trendsceek method

**Usage**

```
trendSceek(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "raw"),
  subset_genes = NULL,
  nrand = 100,
  ncores = 8,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	Giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>subset_genes</code>	subset of genes to run trendsceek on
<code>nrand</code>	An integer specifying the number of random resamplings of the mark distribution as to create the null-distribution.
<code>ncores</code>	An integer specifying the number of cores to be used by BiocParallel
<code>...</code>	Additional parameters to the <a href="#">trendsceek_test</a> function



**Details**

This function is a wrapper for the trendsceek\_test method implemented in the trendsceek package

**Value**

data.frame with trendsceek spatial genes results

**Examples**

```
trendSceek(gobject)
```

---

updateGiottoImage	<i>updateGiottoImage</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

---

**Description**

Updates the boundaries of a giotto image attached to a giotto object

**Usage**

```
updateGiottoImage(
  gobject,
  image_name,
  xmax_adj = 0,
  xmin_adj = 0,
  ymax_adj = 0,
  ymin_adj = 0,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
image_name	spatial locations
xmax_adj	adjustment of the maximum x-value to align the image
xmin_adj	adjustment of the minimum x-value to align the image
ymax_adj	adjustment of the maximum y-value to align the image
ymin_adj	adjustment of the minimum y-value to align the image
return_gobject	return a giotto object

**Value**

a giotto object or an updated giotto image if return\_gobject = F

**Examples**

```
updateGiottoImage(gobject)
```

---

viewHMRFresults	<i>viewHMRFresults</i>
-----------------	------------------------

---

## Description

View results from doHMRF.

## Usage

```
viewHMRFresults(  
  gobject,  
  HMRFoutput,  
  k = NULL,  
  betas_to_view = NULL,  
  third_dim = NULL,  
  ...  
)
```

## Arguments

gobject	giotto object
HMRFoutput	HMRF output from doHMRF
k	number of HMRF domains
betas_to_view	results from different betas that you want to view
...	paramters to visPlot()

## Details

Description ...

## Value

spatial plots with HMRF domains

## See Also

[visPlot](#)

## Examples

```
viewHMRFresults(gobject)
```

---

viewHMRResults2D	<i>viewHMRResults2D</i>
------------------	-------------------------

---

## Description

View results from doHMRF.

## Usage

```
viewHMRResults2D(  
  gobject,  
  HMRFoutput,  
  k = NULL,  
  betas_to_view = NULL,  
  third_dim = NULL,  
  ...  
)
```

## Arguments

gobject	giotto object
HMRFoutput	HMRF output from doHMRF
k	number of HMRF domains
betas_to_view	results from different betas that you want to view
...	paramters to visPlot()

## Details

Description ...

## Value

spatial plots with HMRF domains

## See Also

[spatPlot2D](#)

## Examples

```
viewHMRResults2D(gobject)
```

---

viewHMRResults3D	<i>viewHMRResults3D</i>
------------------	-------------------------

---

## Description

View results from doHMRF.

## Usage

```
viewHMRResults3D(  
  gobject,  
  HMRFoutput,  
  k = NULL,  
  betas_to_view = NULL,  
  third_dim = NULL,  
  ...  
)
```

## Arguments

gobject	giotto object
HMRFoutput	HMRF output from doHMRF
k	number of HMRF domains
betas_to_view	results from different betas that you want to view
...	paramters to visPlot()

## Details

Description ...

## Value

spatial plots with HMRF domains

## See Also

[spatPlot3D](#)

## Examples

```
viewHMRResults3D(gobject)
```

---

violinPlot

*violinPlot*


---

## Description

Creates violinplot for selected clusters

## Usage

```
violinPlot(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  cluster_column,
  cluster_custom_order = NULL,
  color_violin = c("genes", "cluster"),
  cluster_color_code = NULL,
  strip_position = c("top", "right", "left", "bottom"),
  strip_text = 7,
  axis_text_x_size = 10,
  axis_text_y_size = 6,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "violinPlot"
)
```

## Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
genes	genes to plot
cluster_column	name of column to use for clusters
cluster_custom_order	custom order of clusters
color_violin	color violin according to genes or clusters
cluster_color_code	color code for clusters
strip_position	position of gene labels
strip_text	size of strip text
axis_text_x_size	size of x-axis text
axis_text_y_size	size of y-axis text
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object

save\_plot            directly save the plot [boolean]  
 save\_param          list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)  
 default\_save\_name            default save name for saving, don't change, change save\_name in save\_param

### Value

ggplot

### Examples

```
violinPlot(gobject)
```

---

visDimGenePlot	<i>visDimGenePlot</i>
----------------	-----------------------

---

### Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to dimension reduction coordinates

### Usage

```
visDimGenePlot(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = NULL,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  point_size = 1,
  genes_high_color = NULL,
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  midpoint = 0,
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
  cow_align = "h",
  show_legend = T,
  plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),
  show_plots = F
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>edge_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>scale_alpha_with_expression</code>	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>midpoint</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>cow_n_col</code>	cowplot param: how many columns
<code>cow_rel_h</code>	cowplot param: relative height
<code>cow_rel_w</code>	cowplot param: relative width
<code>cow_align</code>	cowplot param: how to align
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>show_plots</code>	show plots

**Details**

Description of parameters.

**Value**

ggplot

**Examples**

```
visDimGenePlot(gobject)
```

---

```
visDimGenePlot_2D_ggplot
      visDimGenePlot_2D_ggplot
```

---

## Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to dimension reduction coordinates

## Usage

```
visDimGenePlot_2D_ggplot(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  point_size = 1,
  genes_high_color = "red",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  midpoint = 0,
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
  cow_align = "h",
  show_legend = T,
  show_plots = F
)
```

## Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	gene expression values to use
genes	genes to show
dim_reduction_to_use	dimension reduction to use
dim_reduction_name	dimension reduction name
dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis



dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
scale_alpha_with_expression	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
point_size	size of point (cell)
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
midpoint	size of point (cell)
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_legend	show legend
show_plots	show plots

## Details

Description of parameters.

## Value

ggplot

## Examples

```
visDimGenePlot_2D_ggplot(gobject)
```

---

```
visDimGenePlot_3D_plotly
visDimGenePlot_3D_plotly
```

---

## Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to dimension reduction coordinates

**Usage**

```
visDimGenePlot_3D_plotly(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = 3,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  point_size = 1,
  genes_high_color = NULL,
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  show_legend = T,
  show_plots = F
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>edge_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>show_plots</code>	show plots

**Details**

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
visDimGenePlot_3D_plotly(gobject)
```

---

visDimPlot	<i>visDimPlot</i>
------------	-------------------

---

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
visDimPlot(  
  gobject,  
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",  
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",  
  dim1_to_use = 1,  
  dim2_to_use = 2,  
  dim3_to_use = NULL,  
  show_NN_network = F,  
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",  
  network_name = "sNN.pca",  
  cell_color = NULL,  
  color_as_factor = T,  
  cell_color_code = NULL,  
  select_cell_groups = NULL,  
  select_cells = NULL,  
  show_other_cells = T,  
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",  
  other_point_size = 0.5,  
  show_cluster_center = F,  
  show_center_label = T,  
  center_point_size = 4,  
  center_point_border_col = "black",  
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,  
  label_size = 4,  
  label_fontface = "bold",  
  edge_alpha = NULL,  
  point_size = 3,  
  point_border_col = "black",  
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,  
  plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),  
  show_legend = T,  
  show_plot = F,  
  return_plot = TRUE,  
  save_plot = F,  
  save_dir = NULL,
```

```

    save_folder = NULL,
    save_name = NULL,
    save_format = NULL,
    show_saved_plot = F,
    ...
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters
<code>show_center_label</code>	plot label of selected clusters
<code>center_point_size</code>	size of center points
<code>label_size</code>	size of labels
<code>label_fontface</code>	font of labels
<code>edge_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_dir</code>	directory to save the plot

save_folder	(optional) folder in directory to save the plot
save_name	name of plot
save_format	format of plot (e.g. tiff, png, pdf, ...)
show_saved_plot	load & display the saved plot

## Details

Description of parameters.

## Value

ggplot or plotly

## Examples

```
visDimPlot(gobject)
```

---

visDimPlot_2D_ggplot	<i>visDimPlot_2D_ggplot</i>
----------------------	-----------------------------

---

## Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

## Usage

```
visDimPlot_2D_ggplot(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  center_point_border_col = "black",
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  label_size = 4,
  label_fontface = "bold",
```

```

    edge_alpha = NULL,
    point_size = 1,
    point_border_col = "black",
    point_border_stroke = 0.1,
    show_legend = T,
    show_plot = F,
    return_plot = TRUE,
    save_plot = F,
    save_dir = NULL,
    save_folder = NULL,
    save_name = NULL,
    save_format = NULL,
    show_saved_plot = F,
    ...
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>other_point_size</code>	size of not selected cells
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters
<code>show_center_label</code>	plot label of selected clusters
<code>center_point_size</code>	size of center points

label_size	size of labels
label_fontface	font of labels
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_size	size of point (cell)
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_legend	show legend

### Details

Description of parameters.

### Value

ggplot

### Examples

```
visDimPlot_2D_ggplot(gobject)
```

---

visDimPlot\_2D\_plotly    *visDimPlot\_2D\_plotly*

---

### Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

### Usage

```
visDimPlot_2D_plotly(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
```

```

    center_point_size = 4,
    label_size = 4,
    edge_alpha = NULL,
    point_size = 5
  )

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters
<code>show_center_label</code>	plot label of selected clusters
<code>center_point_size</code>	size of center points
<code>label_size</code>	size of labels
<code>edge_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)

### Details

Description of parameters.

### Value

plotly

### Examples

```
visDimPlot_2D_plotly(gobject)
```



---

visDimPlot\_3D\_plotly    *visDimPlot\_3D\_plotly*


---

## Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

## Usage

```
visDimPlot_3D_plotly(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = 3,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  label_size = 4,
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  point_size = 1
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)

network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points
label_size	size of labels
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_size	size of point (cell)

### Details

Description of parameters.

### Value

plotly

### Examples

```
visDimPlot_3D_plotly(gobject)
```

---

visForceLayoutPlot	<i>visForceLayoutPlot</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

---

### Description

Visualize cells according to forced layout algorithm coordinates

### Usage

```
visForceLayoutPlot(
  gobject,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  layout_name = "layout",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  show_NN_network = T,
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = TRUE,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  point_size = 1,
```

```

    point_border_col = "black",
    point_border_stroke = 0.1,
    show_legend = T,
    show_plot = F,
    return_plot = TRUE,
    save_plot = F,
    save_dir = NULL,
    save_folder = NULL,
    save_name = NULL,
    save_format = NULL,
    show_saved_plot = F,
    ...
)

```

### Arguments

gobject	giotto object
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	NN network to use
layout_name	name of layout to use
dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_size	size of point (cell)
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_dir	directory to save the plot
save_folder	(optional) folder in directory to save the plot
save_name	name of plot
save_format	format of plot (e.g. tiff, png, pdf, ...)
show_saved_plot	load & display the saved plot

**Details**

Description of parameters.

**Value**

ggplot

**Examples**

```
visForceLayoutPlot(gobject)
```

---

visGenePlot

*visGenePlot*


---

**Description**

Visualize cells and gene expression according to spatial coordinates

**Usage**

```
visGenePlot(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  genes_high_color = NULL,
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  show_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  midpoint = 0,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  point_size = 1,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_legend = T,
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
  cow_align = "h",
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),
  show_plots = F
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>genes_high_color</code>	color represents high gene expression
<code>genes_mid_color</code>	color represents middle gene expression
<code>genes_low_color</code>	color represents low gene expression
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>show_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>grid_color</code>	color of spatial grid
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>midpoint</code>	expression midpoint
<code>scale_alpha_with_expression</code>	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>cow_n_col</code>	cowplot param: how many columns
<code>cow_rel_h</code>	cowplot param: relative height
<code>cow_rel_w</code>	cowplot param: relative width
<code>cow_align</code>	cowplot param: how to align
<code>axis_scale</code>	three mode to adjust axis scale
<code>x_ticks</code>	number of ticks on x axis
<code>y_ticks</code>	number of ticks on y axis
<code>z_ticks</code>	number of ticks on z axis
<code>plot_method</code>	two methods of plot
<code>show_plots</code>	show plots

**Details**

Description of parameters.

**Value**

ggplot or plotly

**Examples**

```
visGenePlot(gobject)
```

---

```
visGenePlot_2D_ggplot  visGenePlot_2D_ggplot
```

---

**Description**

Visualize cells and gene expression according to spatial coordinates

**Usage**

```
visGenePlot_2D_ggplot(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  genes_high_color = "darkred",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "darkblue",
  show_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  midpoint = 0,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  point_size = 1,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_legend = T,
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
  cow_align = "h",
  show_plots = F
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>genes_high_color</code>	color represents high gene expression
<code>genes_mid_color</code>	color represents middle gene expression

genes_low_color	color represents low gene expression
show_network	show underlying spatial network
network_color	color of spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
show_grid	show spatial grid
grid_color	color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
midpoint	expression midpoint
scale_alpha_with_expression	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
point_size	size of point (cell)
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_legend	show legend
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_plots	show plots

**Details**

Description of parameters.

**Value**

ggplot

**Examples**

```
visGenePlot_2D_ggplot(gobject)
```

---

visGenePlot\_3D\_plotly    *visGenePlot\_3D\_plotly*

---

**Description**

Visualize cells and gene expression according to spatial coordinates

**Usage**

```
visGenePlot_3D_plotly(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  show_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  show_grid = F,
  genes_high_color = NULL,
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  point_size = 1,
  show_legend = T,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  show_plots = F
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>show_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>genes_high_color</code>	color represents high gene expression
<code>genes_mid_color</code>	color represents middle gene expression
<code>genes_low_color</code>	color represents low gene expression
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>axis_scale</code>	three mode to adjust axis scale
<code>x_ticks</code>	number of ticks on x axis
<code>y_ticks</code>	number of ticks on y axis



z_ticks	number of ticks on z axis
show_plots	show plots
grid_color	color of spatial grid
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
visGenePlot_3D_plotly(gobject)
```

---

visPlot	<i>visPlot</i>
---------	----------------

---

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
visPlot(  
  gobject,  
  sdimx = NULL,  
  sdimy = NULL,  
  sdimz = NULL,  
  point_size = 3,  
  point_border_col = "black",  
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,  
  cell_color = NULL,  
  cell_color_code = NULL,  
  color_as_factor = T,  
  select_cell_groups = NULL,  
  select_cells = NULL,  
  show_other_cells = T,  
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",  
  show_network = F,  
  network_color = NULL,  
  network_alpha = 1,  
  other_cell_alpha = 0.1,  
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",  
  show_grid = F,  
)
```

```

    grid_color = NULL,
    grid_alpha = 1,
    spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
    coord_fix_ratio = 0.6,
    title = "",
    show_legend = T,
    axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
    custom_ratio = NULL,
    x_ticks = NULL,
    y_ticks = NULL,
    z_ticks = NULL,
    plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),
    show_plot = F,
    return_plot = TRUE,
    save_plot = F,
    save_dir = NULL,
    save_folder = NULL,
    save_name = NULL,
    save_format = NULL,
    show_saved_plot = F,
    ...
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>sdimz</code>	z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimz')
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use

show_grid	show spatial grid
grid_color	color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
coord_fix_ratio	fix ratio between x and y-axis
title	title of plot
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_dir	directory to save the plot
save_folder	(optional) folder in directory to save the plot
save_name	name of plot
save_format	format of plot (e.g. tiff, png, pdf, ...)
show_saved_plot	load & display the saved plot

### Details

Description of parameters.

### Value

ggplot

### Examples

```
visPlot(gobject)
```

---

visPlot_2D_ggplot	<i>visPlot_2D_ggplot</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

---

### Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

### Usage

```
visPlot_2D_ggplot(
  gobject,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  point_size = 3,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
```

```

color_as_factor = T,
select_cell_groups = NULL,
select_cells = NULL,
show_other_cells = T,
other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
show_network = F,
network_color = NULL,
network_alpha = 1,
other_cells_alpha = 0.1,
spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
show_grid = F,
grid_color = NULL,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
coord_fix_ratio = 0.6,
title = "",
show_legend = T,
axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
custom_ratio = NULL,
x_ticks = NULL,
y_ticks = NULL,
z_ticks = NULL,
show_plot = F,
return_plot = TRUE,
save_plot = F,
save_dir = NULL,
save_folder = NULL,
save_name = NULL,
save_format = NULL,
show_saved_plot = F,
...
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs

show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
show_network	show underlying spatial network
network_color	color of spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
show_grid	show spatial grid
grid_color	color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
coord_fix_ratio	fix ratio between x and y-axis
title	title of plot
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_dir	directory to save the plot
save_folder	(optional) folder in directory to save the plot
save_name	name of plot
save_format	format of plot (e.g. tiff, png, pdf, ...)
show_saved_plot	load & display the saved plot

## Details

Description of parameters.

## Value

ggplot

## Examples

```
visPlot_2D_ggplot(gobject)
```

---

visPlot_2D_plotly	<i>visPlot_2D_plotly</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

---

## Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

## Usage

```
visPlot_2D_plotly(
  gobject,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  point_size = 3,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_network = F,
  network_color = "lightgray",
  network_alpha = 1,
  other_cell_alpha = 0.5,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  grid_alpha = 1,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  show_legend = T,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  show_plot = F
)
```

## Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor

select_cell_groups	select a subset of the groups from cell_color
show_network	show underlying spatial network
network_color	color of spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
show_grid	show spatial grid
grid_color	color of spatial grid
grid_alpha	alpha of spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot

### Details

Description of parameters.

### Value

plotly

### Examples

```
visPlot_2D_plotly(gobject)
```

---

visPlot_3D_plotly	<i>visPlot_3D_plotly</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

---

### Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

### Usage

```
visPlot_3D_plotly(
  gobject,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  point_size = 3,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_network = F,
```

```

    network_color = NULL,
    network_alpha = 1,
    other_cell_alpha = 0.5,
    spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
    spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
    title = "",
    show_legend = T,
    axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
    custom_ratio = NULL,
    x_ticks = NULL,
    y_ticks = NULL,
    z_ticks = NULL,
    show_plot = F
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>sdimz</code>	z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimz')
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select a subset of the groups from <code>cell_color</code>
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>title</code>	title of plot
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>show_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>grid_color</code>	color of spatial grid
<code>coord_fix_ratio</code>	fix ratio between x and y-axis



**Details**

Description of parameters.

**Value**

ggplot

**Examples**

```
visPlot_3D_plotly(gobject)
```

---

visSpatDimGenePlot	<i>visSpatDimGenePlot</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

---

**Description**

integration of visSpatDimGenePlot\_2D(ggplot) and visSpatDimGenePlot\_3D(plotly)

**Usage**

```
visSpatDimGenePlot(
  gobject,
  plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  plot_alignment = c("horizontal", "vertical"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  genes,
  dim_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  edge_alpha_dim = NULL,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  label_size = 16,
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_high_color = "red",
  dim_point_size = 3,
  nn_network_alpha = 0.5,
  show_spatial_network = F,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  spatial_network_alpha = 0.5,
```

```

show_spatial_grid = F,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
spatial_grid_color = NULL,
spatial_grid_alpha = 0.5,
spatial_point_size = 3,
spatial_point_border_col = "black",
spatial_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
legend_text_size = 12,
axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
custom_ratio = NULL,
x_ticks = NULL,
y_ticks = NULL,
z_ticks = NULL,
midpoint = 0,
point_size = 1,
cow_n_col = 2,
cow_rel_h = 1,
cow_rel_w = 1,
cow_align = "h",
show_legend = T,
show_plots = F
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>sdimz</code>	z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimz')
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>dim_point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>dim_point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>

edge_alpha_dim	dim reduction plot: column to use for alpha of the edges
scale_alpha_with_expression	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
label_size	size for the label
genes_low_color	color to represent low expression of gene
genes_high_color	color to represent high expression of gene
dim_point_size	dim reduction plot: point size
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
spatial_point_size	spatial plot: point size
spatial_point_border_col	color of border around points
spatial_point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
legend_text_size	the size of the text in legend
axis_scale	three modes to adjust axis scale ratio
custom_ratio	set the axis scale ratio on custom
x_ticks	number of ticks on x axis
y_ticks	number of ticks on y axis
z_ticks	number of ticks on z axis
midpoint	size of point (cell)
point_size	size of point (cell)
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot

## Details

Description of parameters.

## Value

ggplot or plotly

## Examples

```
visSpatDimGenePlot(gobject)
```

---

visSpatDimGenePlot\_2D    *visSpatDimGenePlot\_2D*


---

### Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in ggplot mode

### Usage

```
visSpatDimGenePlot_2D(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  plot_alignment = c("horizontal", "vertical"),
  genes,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  point_size = 1,
  dim_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_NN_network = F,
  show_spatial_network = F,
  show_spatial_grid = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  edge_alpha_dim = NULL,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  spatial_point_size = 1,
  spatial_point_border_col = "black",
  spatial_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  midpoint = 0,
  genes_high_color = "red",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
  cow_align = "h",
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  show_legend = T,
  show_plots = F
)
```

### Arguments

gobject                  giotto object

expression_values	gene expression values to use
plot_alignment	direction to align plot
genes	genes to show
dim_reduction_to_use	dimension reduction to use
dim_reduction_name	dimension reduction name
dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
point_size	size of point (cell)
dim_point_border_col	color of border around points
dim_point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
edge_alpha_dim	dim reduction plot: column to use for alpha of the edges
scale_alpha_with_expression	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
spatial_point_size	spatial plot: point size
spatial_point_border_col	color of border around points
spatial_point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
midpoint	size of point (cell)
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_legend	show legend
dim_point_size	dim reduction plot: point size
show_plot	show plot

## Details

Description of parameters.

**Value**

ggplot

**Examples**

```
visSpatDimGenePlot_2D(gobject)
```

---

```
visSpatDimGenePlot_3D  visSpatDimGenePlot_3D
```

---

**Description**

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in plotly mode

**Usage**

```
visSpatDimGenePlot_3D(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  plot_alignment = c("horizontal", "vertical"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  genes,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  label_size = 16,
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_high_color = "red",
  dim_point_size = 3,
  nn_network_alpha = 0.5,
  show_spatial_network = F,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  spatial_network_alpha = 0.5,
  show_spatial_grid = F,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  spatial_grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_alpha = 0.5,
  spatial_point_size = 3,
  legend_text_size = 12,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
```

```

    y_ticks = NULL,
    z_ticks = NULL
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>genes_low_color</code>	color represent high gene expression (see details)
<code>genes_high_color</code>	color represent high gene expression (see details)
<code>nn_network_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>show_spatial_network</code>	show spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial/nn network
<code>spatial_network_alpha</code>	alpha of spatial network
<code>show_spatial_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>spatial_grid_color</code>	color of spatial grid
<code>spatial_grid_alpha</code>	alpha of spatial grid
<code>legend_text_size</code>	text size of legend
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot

### Details

Description of parameters.

**Value**

plotly

**Examples**

```
visSpatDimPlot_3D(gobject)
```

---

visSpatDimPlot

*visSpatDimPlot*


---

**Description**

integration of visSpatDimPlot\_2D and visSpatDimPlot\_3D

**Usage**

```
visSpatDimPlot(
  gobject,
  plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),
  plot_alignment = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  label_size = NULL,
  label_fontface = "bold",
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  dim_point_size = 3,
  dim_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  nn_network_alpha = NULL,
  show_spatial_network = F,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  spatial_network_alpha = 0.5,
```



```

    show_spatial_grid = F,
    spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
    spatial_grid_color = NULL,
    spatial_grid_alpha = 0.5,
    spatial_point_size = 3,
    legend_text_size = 12,
    spatial_point_border_col = "black",
    spatial_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
    show_legend = T,
    axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
    custom_ratio = NULL,
    x_ticks = NULL,
    y_ticks = NULL,
    z_ticks = NULL,
    show_plot = F
  )

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>nn_network_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>show_spatial_network</code>	show spatial network

```

spatial_network_name
    name of spatial network to use
spatial_network_alpha
    alpha of spatial network
show_spatial_grid
    show spatial grid
spatial_grid_name
    name of spatial grid to use
spatial_grid_color
    color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_alpha
    alpha of spatial grid
legend_text_size
    text size of legend
show_legend
    show legend
show_plot
    show plot
plot_mode
    choose the mode to draw plot : ggplot or plotly
spatial_network_color
    color of spatial network

```

### Details

Description of parameters.

### Value

ggplot or plotly

### Examples

```
visSpatDimPlot(gobject)
```

---

visSpatDimPlot_2D	<i>visSpatDimPlot_2D</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

---

### Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in ggplot2 mode

### Usage

```

visSpatDimPlot_2D(
  gobject,
  plot_alignment = c("vertical", "horizontal"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,

```

```

show_NN_network = F,
nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
network_name = "sNN.pca",
show_cluster_center = F,
show_center_label = T,
center_point_size = 4,
label_size = 4,
label_fontface = "bold",
cell_color = NULL,
color_as_factor = T,
cell_color_code = NULL,
select_cell_groups = NULL,
select_cells = NULL,
show_other_cells = T,
other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
dim_plot_mode = NULL,
dim_point_size = 1,
dim_point_border_col = "black",
dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
nn_network_alpha = 0.05,
show_spatial_network = F,
spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
spatial_network_color = NULL,
show_spatial_grid = F,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
spatial_grid_color = NULL,
spatial_point_size = 1,
spatial_point_border_col = "black",
spatial_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
show_legend = T,
show_plot = F,
plot_method = "ggplot"
)

```

### Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)

color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
nn_network_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
show_spatial_network	show spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
spatial_network_color	color of spatial network
show_spatial_grid	show spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
spatial_grid_color	color of spatial grid
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_dir	directory to save the plot
save_folder	(optional) folder in directory to save the plot
save_name	name of plot
save_format	format of plot (e.g. tiff, png, pdf, ...)
show_saved_plot	load & display the saved plot

### Details

Description of parameters.

### Value

ggplot

### Examples

```
visSpatDimPlot_2D(gobject)
```

---

visSpatDimPlot_3D	<i>visSpatDimPlot_3D</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

---

## Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in plotly mode

## Usage

```
visSpatDimPlot_3D(
  gobject,
  plot_alignment = c("horizontal", "vertical"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  label_size = 16,
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  dim_point_size = 3,
  nn_network_alpha = 0.5,
  show_spatial_network = F,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  spatial_network_alpha = 0.5,
  show_spatial_grid = F,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  spatial_grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_alpha = 0.5,
  spatial_point_size = 3,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  legend_text_size = 12
)
```

## Arguments

gobject                  giotto object

plot_alignment	direction to align plot
dim_reduction_to_use	dimension reduction to use
dim_reduction_name	dimension reduction name
dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
dim3_to_use	dimension to use on z-axis
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
nn_network_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
show_spatial_network	show spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
spatial_network_alpha	alpha of spatial network
show_spatial_grid	show spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
spatial_grid_color	color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_alpha	alpha of spatial grid
legend_text_size	text size of legend
spatial_network_color	color of spatial network
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot

## Details

Description of parameters.

## Value

plotly

**Examples**

```
visSpatDimPlot_3D(gobject)
```

---

writeHMRResults	<i>writeHMRResults</i>
-----------------	------------------------

---

**Description**

write results from doHMRF to a data.table.

**Usage**

```
writeHMRResults(
  gobject,
  HMRFoutput,
  k = NULL,
  betas_to_view = NULL,
  print_command = F
)
```

**Arguments**

gobject	giotto object
HMRFoutput	HMRF output from doHMRF
k	k to write results for
betas_to_view	results from different betas that you want to view
print_command	see the python command

**Value**

data.table with HMRF results for each b and the selected k

**Examples**

```
writeHMRResults(gobject)
```

---

write_giotto_viewer_annotation	<i>write_giotto_viewer_annotation</i>
--------------------------------	---------------------------------------

---

**Description**

write out factor-like annotation data from a giotto object for the Viewer

**Usage**

```
write_giotto_viewer_annotation(
  annotation,
  annot_name = "test",
  output_directory = getwd()
)
```

**Arguments**

annotation	annotation from the data.table from giotto object
annot_name	name of the annotation
output_directory	directory where to save the files

**Value**

write a .txt and .annot file for the selection annotation

---

```
write_giotto_viewer_dim_reduction
      write_giotto_viewer_dim_reduction
```

---

**Description**

write out dimensional reduction data from a giotto object for the Viewer

**Usage**

```
write_giotto_viewer_dim_reduction(
  dim_reduction_cell,
  dim_red = NULL,
  dim_red_name = NULL,
  dim_red_rounding = NULL,
  dim_red_rescale = c(-20, 20),
  output_directory = getwd()
)
```

**Arguments**

dim_reduction_cell	dimension reduction slot from giotto object
dim_red	high level name of dimension reduction
dim_red_name	specific name of dimension reduction to use
dim_red_rounding	numerical indicating how to round the coordinates
dim_red_rescale	numericals to rescale the coordinates
output_directory	directory where to save the files

**Value**

write a .txt and .annot file for the selection annotation



---

```
write_giotto_viewer_numeric_annotation  
    write_giotto_viewer_numeric_annotation
```

---

**Description**

write out numeric annotation data from a giotto object for the Viewer

**Usage**

```
write_giotto_viewer_numeric_annotation(  
  annotation,  
  annot_name = "test",  
  output_directory = getwd()  
)
```

**Arguments**

annotation	annotation from the data.table from giotto object
annot_name	name of the annotation
output_directory	directory where to save the files

**Value**

write a .txt and .annot file for the selection annotation

# Index

- \*Topic **giotto**,
  - giotto-class, [154](#)
  - print.giotto, [210](#)
  - show,giotto-method, [225](#)
- \*Topic **giotto**
  - createGiottoObject, [59](#)
- \*Topic **object**
  - giotto-class, [154](#)
  - print.giotto, [210](#)
  - show,giotto-method, [225](#)
- [addCellIntMetadata, 8](#)
- [addCellMetadata, 9, 60](#)
- [addCellStatistics, 10, 16](#)
- [addGeneMetadata, 11, 60](#)
- [addGenesPerc, 11](#)
- [addGeneStatistics, 12, 16](#)
- [addGiottoImage, 13](#)
- [addGiottoImageToSpatPlot, 13](#)
- [addHMRf, 14](#)
- [addNetworkLayout, 15](#)
- [addStatistics, 16](#)
- [adjustGiottoMatrix, 16](#)
- [all\\_plots\\_save\\_function, 17, 26, 29, 31, 32, 34, 36, 38, 129, 132, 155, 158, 171–173, 175–178, 180, 183, 184, 197–199, 212, 230, 231, 233, 235, 278–280](#)
- [annotate\\_spatlocs\\_with\\_spatgrid\\_2D, 21](#)
- [annotate\\_spatlocs\\_with\\_spatgrid\\_3D, 22](#)
- [annotateGiotto, 19](#)
- [annotateSpatialGrid, 20](#)
- [annotateSpatialNetwork, 20](#)
- [average\\_gene\\_gene\\_expression\\_in\\_groups, 22](#)
- [binSpect, 23](#)
- [calculate\\_distance\\_and\\_weight, 28](#)
- [calculateHVG, 25, 216, 219, 221](#)
- [calculateMetaTable, 26](#)
- [calculateMetaTableCells, 27](#)
- [cellProximityBarplot, 28](#)
- [cellProximityEnrichment, 29](#)
- [cellProximityHeatmap, 30](#)
- [cellProximityNetwork, 31](#)
- [cellProximitySpatPlot, 33](#)
- [cellProximitySpatPlot2D, 34, 34](#)
- [cellProximitySpatPlot3D, 34, 36](#)
- [cellProximityVisPlot, 39](#)
- [cellProximityVisPlot\\_2D\\_ggplot, 41](#)
- [cellProximityVisPlot\\_2D\\_plotly, 43](#)
- [cellProximityVisPlot\\_3D\\_plotly, 44](#)
- [changeGiottoInstructions, 46](#)
- [changeImageBg, 47](#)
- [cluster\\_walktrap, 121](#)
- [clusterCells, 47](#)
- [clusterSpatialCorGenes, 50](#)
- [combCCcom, 51, 196, 198](#)
- [combineCellProximityGenes, 51](#)
- [combineCellProximityGenes\\_per\\_interaction, 53](#)
- [combineCPG, 53](#)
- [combineMetadata, 54](#)
- [convert\\_mgImage\\_to\\_array\\_DT, 55](#)
- [convertEnsemblToGeneSymbol, 55](#)
- [create\\_average\\_detection\\_DT, 73](#)
- [create\\_average\\_DT, 74](#)
- [create\\_cell\\_type\\_random\\_cell\\_IDs, 74](#)
- [create\\_crossSection\\_object, 75](#)
- [create\\_delaunayNetwork2D, 76](#)
- [create\\_delaunayNetwork3D, 77](#)
- [create\\_delaunayNetwork\\_deldir, 77](#)
- [create\\_delaunayNetwork\\_geometry, 78](#)
- [create\\_delaunayNetwork\\_geometry\\_3D, 78](#)
- [create\\_delaunayNetwork\\_RTtriangle, 79](#)
- [create\\_genes\\_to\\_use\\_matrix, 79](#)
- [create\\_KNNnetwork\\_dbSCAN, 80](#)
- [create\\_screplot, 80](#)
- [createCrossSection, 56](#)
- [createGiottoImage, 13, 57](#)
- [createGiottoInstructions, 58, 60, 61](#)
- [createGiottoObject, 59, 292](#)
- [createGiottoVisiumObject, 61](#)
- [createHeatmap\\_DT, 62](#)
- [createMetagenes, 63](#)
- [createNearestNetwork, 64](#)

- createSpatialDelaunayNetwork, 66, 200
- createSpatialEnrich, 67, 125
- createSpatialGrid, 68
- createSpatialGrid\_2D, 69
- createSpatialGrid\_3D, 70
- createSpatialKNNnetwork, 71
- createSpatialNetwork, 72, 86
- crossSectionGenePlot, 81
- crossSectionGenePlot3D, 82
- crossSectionPlot, 83, 83
- crossSectionPlot3D, 84
  
- decide\_cluster\_order, 85
- delaunayn, 67
- deldir, 67
- detectSpatialCorGenes, 86
- detectSpatialPatterns, 87
- dimCellPlot, 88, 92
- dimCellPlot2D, 88, 89, 90
- dimGenePlot, 93, 96, 98
- dimGenePlot2D, 93, 94, 94, 98
- dimGenePlot3D, 94, 96, 96
- dimPlot, 98, 103, 105, 192, 194, 196, 201, 203, 205, 206, 208, 210
- dimPlot2D, 98–100, 100, 105, 191–194, 196, 200–203, 205–208, 210
- dimPlot3D, 92, 99, 100, 103, 103, 192, 194–196, 201, 203–206, 208–210
- do\_permuttest (do\_permuttest\_random), 123
- do\_permuttest\_random, 123
- doHclust, 50, 105
- doHMRf, 106
- doKmeans, 50, 108
- doLeidenCluster, 50, 109, 112, 294
- doLeidenSubCluster, 110
- doLouvainCluster, 50, 112
- doLouvainCluster\_community, 50, 113, 113, 117, 119, 294
- doLouvainCluster\_multinet, 50, 113, 114, 117, 120, 294
- doLouvainSubCluster, 115
- doLouvainSubCluster\_community, 117
- doLouvainSubCluster\_multinet, 119
- doRandomWalkCluster, 50, 121
- doSNNcluster, 50, 122
- DT\_removeNA, 123
  
- estimateImageBg, 124
- exportGiottoViewer, 124
- exprCellCellcom, 125, 171, 172
- extractNearestNetwork, 127
  
- fDataDT, 127
- filterCellProximityGenes, 128
- filterCombinations, 129, 132
- filterCPG, 130
- filterDistributions, 131
- filterGiotto, 132
- find\_grid\_2D, 147
- find\_grid\_3D, 147
- find\_grid\_x, 148
- find\_grid\_y, 148
- find\_grid\_z, 148
- findCellProximityGenes, 133
- findCellProximityGenes\_per\_interaction, 135
- findCPG, 135
- findGiniMarkers, 137, 139, 141
- findGiniMarkers\_one\_vs\_all, 138, 142
- findMarkers, 140, 146
- findMarkers\_one\_vs\_all, 141
- findMastMarkers, 141, 143, 144
- findMastMarkers\_one\_vs\_all, 142, 144
- findNetworkNeighbors, 145
- findScranMarkers, 141, 145, 147
- findScranMarkers\_one\_vs\_all, 142, 146
- FSV\_show, 149
  
- general\_save\_function, 18
- get10Xmatrix, 150
- get\_os, 153
- getClusterSimilarity, 150
- getDendrogramSplits, 151
- getDistinctColors, 152
- getGiottoImage, 153
- giotto (giotto-class), 154
- giotto-class, 154
- glouvain\_ml, 115
  
- hclust, 106
- Heatmap, 155
- heatmSpatialCorGenes, 154
- hyperGeometricEnrich, 68, 156
  
- insertCrossSectionGenePlot3D, 157
- insertCrossSectionSpatPlot3D, 158
  
- jackstrawPlot, 159
  
- kmeans, 109
- kmeans\_binarize, 161
- kNN, 65
  
- layout\_with\_drl, 15
- loadHMRf, 161

- make\_simulated\_network, 163
- makeSignMatrixPAGE, 162, 169
- makeSignMatrixRank, 163, 211
- mergeClusters, 164
- my\_arowMeans, 165
- my\_growMeans, 165
- my\_rowMeans, 165
  
- nnDT\_to\_kNN, 166
- node\_clusters, 166
- normalizeGiotto, 167
  
- PAGEEnrich, 68, 162, 168
- PCA, 216
- pca\_giotto, 169
- pDataDT, 20, 170
- permutationPA, 160, 237
- plotCCcomDotplot, 170
- plotCCcomHeatmap, 171
- plotCellProximityGenes, 172
- plotCombineCCcom, 174
- plotCombineCellCellCommunication, 175
- plotCombineCellProximityGenes, 176
- plotCombineCPG, 178
- plotCPG, 179
- plotGiottoImage, 180
- plotHeatmap, 181
- plotICG, 183
- plotInteractionChangedGenes, 184
- plotly\_axis\_scale\_2D, 185
- plotly\_axis\_scale\_3D, 185
- plotly\_grid, 186
- plotly\_network, 187
- plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap, 187, 191
- plotMetaDataHeatmap, 189, 189
- plotPCA, 100, 103, 105, 191, 194, 196, 201, 203, 205, 206, 208, 210
- plotPCA\_2D, 100, 103, 105, 192, 193, 196, 201, 203, 205, 206, 208, 210
- plotPCA\_3D, 100, 103, 105, 192, 194, 195, 201, 203, 205, 206, 208, 210
- plotRankSpatvsExpr, 196
- plotRecovery, 197
- plotRecovery\_sub, 198
- plotStatDelaunayNetwork, 199
- plotTSNE, 100, 103, 105, 192, 194, 196, 200, 203, 205, 206, 208, 210
- plotTSNE\_2D, 100, 103, 105, 192, 194, 196, 201, 202, 205, 206, 208, 210
- plotTSNE\_3D, 100, 103, 105, 192, 194, 196, 201, 203, 204, 206, 208, 210
- plotUMAP, 100, 103, 105, 192, 194, 196, 201, 203, 205, 205, 208, 210
  
- plotUMAP\_2D, 100, 103, 105, 192, 194, 196, 201, 203, 205, 206, 207, 210
- plotUMAP\_3D, 100, 103, 105, 192, 194, 196, 201, 203, 205, 206, 208, 209
- prcomp\_irlba, 216
- print.giotto, 210
  
- rank\_binarize, 212
- rankEnrich, 68, 163, 210
- rankSpatialCorGroups, 211
- readExprMatrix, 212
- readGiottoInstructions, 213
- removeBatchEffect, 17
- removeCellAnnotation, 214
- removeGeneAnnotation, 214
- replaceGiottoInstructions, 215
- Rtsne, 219
- runPCA, 215, 223
- runPCA\_factominer, 217
- runPCA\_prcomp\_irlba, 217
- runTSNE, 218
- runUMAP, 220
  
- screePlot, 222
- select\_expression\_values, 224
- select\_spatialNetwork, 224
- selectPatternGenes, 223
- set\_giotto\_python\_path, 225
- show, giotto-method, 225
- showClusterDendrogram, 225
- showClusterHeatmap, 226
- showGiottoImageNames, 153, 180, 228
- showGiottoInstructions, 228
- showGrids, 20, 229
- showNetworks, 229
- showPattern, 230
- showPattern2D, 230, 231
- showPattern3D, 232
- showPatternGenes, 233
- showProcessingSteps, 234
- showSaveParameters, 89, 92, 93, 96, 98, 99, 102, 104, 182, 188, 190, 192, 194, 195, 201, 203, 204, 206, 208, 209, 226, 227, 235, 241, 244, 247, 251, 253, 256, 259, 261, 266, 269, 270, 273, 275, 282, 286, 288, 302
- showSpatialCorGenes, 87, 235
- signPCA, 236
- silhouetteRank, 238
- sNN, 65
- sNNclust, 122
- spat\_fish\_func, 288
- spat\_OR\_func, 289

- spatCellCellcom, [171](#), [172](#), [239](#)
- spatCellPlot, [240](#), [245](#)
- spatCellPlot2D, [240](#), [241](#), [242](#)
- spatDimCellPlot, [245](#), [252](#)
- spatDimCellPlot2D, [245](#), [247](#), [247](#)
- spatDimGenePlot, [252](#), [257](#), [259](#)
- spatDimGenePlot2D, [252](#), [253](#), [254](#), [259](#)
- spatDimGenePlot3D, [253](#), [257](#), [257](#)
- spatDimPlot, [259](#), [266](#), [269](#)
- spatDimPlot2D, [260](#), [261](#), [262](#), [269](#)
- spatDimPlot3D, [261](#), [266](#), [266](#)
- spatGenePlot, [269](#), [273](#), [275](#)
- spatGenePlot2D, [81](#), [270](#), [271](#), [271](#), [275](#)
- spatGenePlot3D, [81](#), [271](#), [273](#), [274](#)
- spatialAEH, [276](#)
- SpatialDE, [276](#)
- spatialDE, [277](#)
- spatNetDistributions, [278](#)
- spatNetDistributionsDistance, [279](#)
- spatNetDistributionsKneighbors, [280](#)
- spatPlot, [281](#), [286](#), [288](#)
- spatPlot2D, [281](#), [282](#), [283](#), [288](#), [299](#)
- spatPlot3D, [282](#), [286](#), [286](#), [300](#)
- specificCellCellcommunicationScores, [289](#)
- split\_dendrogram\_in\_two, [290](#)
- standardise\_giotto, [291](#)
- stitchFieldCoordinates, [60](#), [291](#)
- stitchTileCoordinates, [292](#)
- subClusterCells, [293](#)
- subsetGiotto, [295](#)
- subsetGiottoLocs, [295](#)
- trendSceek, [296](#)
- trendsceek\_test, [296](#)
- triangulate, [66](#), [67](#), [200](#)
- umap, [221](#)
- updateGiottoImage, [297](#)
- viewHMRResults, [298](#)
- viewHMRResults2D, [299](#)
- viewHMRResults3D, [300](#)
- violinPlot, [301](#)
- visDimGenePlot, [302](#)
- visDimGenePlot\_2D\_ggplot, [304](#)
- visDimGenePlot\_3D\_plotly, [305](#)
- visDimPlot, [307](#)
- visDimPlot\_2D\_ggplot, [309](#)
- visDimPlot\_2D\_plotly, [311](#)
- visDimPlot\_3D\_plotly, [313](#)
- visForceLayoutPlot, [314](#)
- visGenePlot, [316](#)
- visGenePlot\_2D\_ggplot, [318](#)
- visGenePlot\_3D\_plotly, [319](#)
- visPlot, [298](#), [321](#)
- visPlot\_2D\_ggplot, [323](#)
- visPlot\_2D\_plotly, [326](#)
- visPlot\_3D\_plotly, [327](#)
- visSpatDimGenePlot, [329](#)
- visSpatDimGenePlot\_2D, [332](#)
- visSpatDimGenePlot\_3D, [334](#)
- visSpatDimPlot, [336](#)
- visSpatDimPlot\_2D, [338](#)
- visSpatDimPlot\_3D, [341](#)
- write\_giotto\_viewer\_annotation, [343](#)
- write\_giotto\_viewer\_dim\_reduction, [344](#)
- write\_giotto\_viewer\_numeric\_annotation, [345](#)
- writeHMRResults, [343](#)
- zlm, [143](#)